SECTION 02620 - SUBDRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes subdrainage systems for the following:

1. Foundations.
2. Underslab areas.
3. Retaining walls.
4. Landscaped areas.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 0 Section "Geotechnical Investigation" for engineer's recommendations for groundwater and site drainage
2. Division 2 Section "Site Clearing"
3. Division 2 Section "Earthwork"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

B. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.

C. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

D. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

E. PS: Polystyrene plastic.

F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. Subdrainage: Drainage system that collects and removes subsurface or seepage water.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Perforated-wall pipe and fittings.
2. Solid-wall pipe and fittings.
3. Drainage conduits.
4. Drainage panels.
5. Geotextile filter fabrics.

B. Approval of waterproofing manufacturer's service agent for use of drainage panels against and for waterproofing membrane protection

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Refer to the "Piping Applications" Article in Part 3 for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 PERFORATED-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:

1. NPS 6 and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
2. NPS 8 and Larger: ASTM F 667; AASHTO M 252, Type CP; or AASHTO M 294, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
3. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.

B. Perforated PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2729, bell-and-spigot ends, for loose joints.

C. Perforated Clay Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 700, Standard- and Extra-Strength classes, unglazed, socket-and-spigot ends, for gasketed joints.

1. Gaskets: ASTM C 425, rubber.

D. Perforated Concrete Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 444, Type 1, and applicable requirements in ASTM C 14, Class 2, socket-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.

1. Gaskets: ASTM C 443, rubber.

2.4 SOLID-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751.

1. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.
2. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal.

B. Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy classes, hub-and-spigot ends, gray, for gasketed joints.

1. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber, of thickness matching class of pipe.

C. PE Drainage Tubing and Fittings: AASHTO M 252, Type S, corrugated, with smooth waterway, for coupled joints.

1. Couplings: AASHTO M 252, corrugated, band type, matching tubing and fittings.

D. PE Pipe and Fittings: AASHTO M 294, Type S, corrugated, with smooth waterway, for coupled joints.

1. Couplings: AASHTO M 294, corrugated, band type, matching tubing and fittings.

E. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, bell-and-spigot ends, for gasketed joints.

1. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal.

2.5 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Sleeve Materials:

a. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
b. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
c. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
d. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

2. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
3. Shielded Flexible Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

2.6 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M; with round-flanged, cast-iron housing; and secured, scoriated, Medium-Duty Loading class, cast-iron cover. Include cast-iron ferrule and countersunk, brass cleanout plug.

B. PVC Cleanouts: ASTM D 3034, PVC cleanout threaded plug and threaded pipe hub.

2.7 DRAINAGE CONDUITS

A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with cuspated, molded-plastic drainage core wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. American Wick Drain Corporation.
b. JDR Enterprises, Inc.
c. TC Mirafi.

2. Nominal Size: 12 inches high by approximately 1 inch thick.

a. Minimum In-Plane Flow: 30 gpm at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.

3. Filter Fabric: PP geotextile.
4. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 outlet connection.

B. Multipipe Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with interconnected, corrugated, perforated-pipe core molded from HDPE complying with ASTM D 1248 and wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Varicore Technologies, Inc.
b. Advanced Drainage Systems

2. Nominal Size: 6 inches high by approximately 1-1/4 inches thick.

3. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile.
4. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 outlet connection.
5. Couplings: HDPE.

C. Single-Pipe Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with perforated corrugated core molded from HDPE complying with ASTM D 3350 and wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Varicore Technologies, Inc.
b. Advanced Drainage Systems

2. Nominal Size: 12 inches high by approximately 1 inch thick.

a. Minimum In-Plane Flow: 30 gpm at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.

3. Nominal Size: 18 inches high by approximately 1 inch thick.

a. Minimum In-Plane Flow: 45 gpm at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.

4. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven, PP geotextile.
5. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 outlet connection.
6. Couplings: Corrugated HDPE band.

2.8 DRAINAGE PANELS

A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels: Prefabricated geocomposite, 36 to 60 inches wide with drainage core faced with geotextile filter fabric.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. American Wick Drain Corporation.
b. Cosella-Dorken.
c. Eljen Corp.
d. Greenstreak, Inc.
e. JDR Enterprises, Inc.
f. LINQ Industrial Fabrics, Inc.
g. Midwest Diversified Technologies Incorporated.
h. TC Mirafi.

2. Drainage Core: Three-dimensional, nonbiodegradable, molded PP or PS.

   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 10,000 lbf/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 1621.
   b. Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 2.8 gpm/ft. of unit width at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 and compressive stress of 25 psig when tested according to ASTM D 4716.

3. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with the following properties determined according to AASHTO M 288:

   a. Survivability: Class 1.
   b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 sieve, maximum.
   c. Permittivity: 0.2 per second, minimum.

4. Film Backing: Polymeric film bonded to drainage core surface.

5. Drainage Core: Open-construction, resilient, approximately 0.4-inch- thick, plastic-filament mesh.

   a. Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 2.4 gpm/ft. of unit width at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 and normal pressure of 25 psig when tested according to ASTM D 4716.

6. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both. Flow rates range from 120 to 200 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.

2.9 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Backfill, drainage course, impervious fill, and satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

2.10 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRICS

A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.

1. Structure Type: [Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament] [or] [woven, monofilament or multifilament].
2. Style(s): [Flat] [and] [sock].

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and areas for suitable conditions where subdrainage systems are to be installed.

B. If subdrainage is required for landscaping, locate and mark existing utilities, underground structures, and aboveground obstructions before beginning installation and avoid disruption and damage of services.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Underground Subdrainage Piping:

1. Perforated PE pipe and fittings, couplings, and coupled joints.
2. Perforated PVC sewer pipe and fittings for loose, bell-and-spigot joints.

B. Underslab Subdrainage Piping:

1. Perforated PE pipe and fittings, couplings, and coupled joints.
2. Perforated PVC sewer pipe and fittings and loose, bell-and-spigot joints.

C. Header Piping:
1. PE drainage tubing and fittings, couplings, and coupled joints.
2. PVC sewer pipe and fittings, couplings, and coupled joints.

3.4 CLEANOUT APPLICATIONS

A. In Underground Subdrainage Piping:

1. At Grade in Earth: PVC] cleanouts.
2. At Grade in Paved Areas: Cast-iron cleanouts.

B. In Underslab Subdrainage Piping:

1. In Equipment Rooms and Unfinished Areas: Cast-iron cleanouts.
2. In Finished Areas: Copper-alloy cleanouts.

3.5 FOUNDATION DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

A. Place impervious fill material on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing after concrete footing forms have been removed. Place and compact impervious fill to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches deep and 12 inches wide.

B. Place impervious fill on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing and compact to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches deep and 12 inches wide after concrete footing forms have been removed.

C. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.

D. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.

E. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive or tape.

F. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for foundation subdrainage.

G. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.

H. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches of finish grade.

I. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.

J. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.

K. Install vertical drainage panels as follows:

1. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
2. Lay perforated drainage pipe at base of footing. Install as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article. Do not install aggregate.
3. Separate 4 inches of fabric at beginning of roll and cut away 4 inches of core. Wrap fabric around end of remaining core.
4. Wrap bottom of panel around drainage pipe.
5. Attach panel to wall at horizontal mark and at beginning of pipe. Place core side of panel against wall. Use concrete nails with washers through product cylinders to attach panel to wall. Place nails from 2 to 6 inches below top of panel, approximately 48 inches apart. Construction adhesives, metal stick pins, or double-sided tape may be used instead of nails. Do not penetrate waterproofing. Before using adhesives, discuss with waterproofing manufacturer.
6. If additional panels are required on same row, cut away 4 inches of installed panel core, install new panel against installed panel, and overlap new panel with installed panel fabric.
7. If additional rows of panels are required, overlap lower panel with 4 inches of fabric.
8. Cut panel as necessary to keep top 12 inches below finish grade.
9. For inside corners, bend panel. For outside corners, cut core to provide 3 inches for overlap.

L. Do not use drainage panels as protection for waterproof membrane unless approved by factory-authorized service representative of waterproofing membrane manufacturer. Submit approval if so used.

M. Place initial backfill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Final backfill to finish elevations and slope away from building.

3.6 UNDERSLAB DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

A. Excavate for underslab drainage system after subgrade material has been compacted but before drainage course has been placed. Include horizontal distance of at least 6 inches between drainage pipe and trench walls. Grade bottom of trench excavations to required slope, and compact to firm, solid bed for drainage system.

B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.

C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.

D. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive.

E. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for underslab subdrainage.

F. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.

G. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping with drainage course to elevation of bottom of slab, and compact and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.

H. Install horizontal drainage panels as follows:

1. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
2. Lay perforated drainage pipe at inside edge of footings.
3. Place drainage panel over drainage pipe with core side up. Peel back fabric and wrap fabric around pipe. Locate top of core at bottom elevation of floor slab.
4. Butt additional panels against other installed panels. If panels have plastic flanges, overlap installed panel with flange.

3.7 RETAINING-WALL DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

A. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.

B. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.

C. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive.

D. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for retaining-wall subdrainage.

E. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.

F. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches of finish grade.

G. Place drainage course in layers not exceeding 3 inches in loose depth; compact each layer placed and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.

H. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.

I. Install vertical drainage panels as follows:

1. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
2. Lay perforated drainage pipe at base of footing as described elsewhere in this Specification. Do not install aggregate.
3. If weep holes are used instead of drainage pipe, cut 1/2-inch- diameter holes on core side at weep-hole locations. Do not cut fabric.

4. Mark horizontal calk line on wall at a point 6 inches less than panel width above footing bottom. Before marking wall, subtract footing width.
5. Separate 4 inches of fabric at beginning of roll and cut away 4 inches of core. Wrap fabric around end of remaining core.
6. Wrap bottom of panel around drainage pipe.
7. Attach panel to wall at horizontal mark and at beginning of wall corner. Place core side of panel against wall. Use concrete nails with washers through product. Place nails from 2 to 6 inches below top of panel, approximately 48 inches apart. Construction adhesives, metal stick pins, or double-sided tape may be used instead of nails. Do not penetrate waterproofing. Before using adhesives, discuss with waterproofing manufacturer.
8. If another panel is required on same row, cut away 4 inches of installed panel core and wrap fabric over new panel.
9. If additional rows of panel are required, overlap lower panel with 4 inches of fabric.
10. Cut panel as necessary to keep top 12 inches below finish grade.
11. For inside corners, bend panel. For outside corners, cut core to provide 3 inches for overlap.
12. Do not use drainage panels as protection for waterproof membrane unless approved by factory-authorized service representative of waterproofing membrane manufacturer. Submit approval if so used.

J. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

3.8 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.

1. Foundation Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches unless otherwise indicated.
2. Underslab Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent.
3. Plaza Deck Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 1.0 percent.
4. Retaining-Wall Subdrainage: When water discharges at end of wall into stormwater piping system, install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches, unless otherwise indicated. However, when water discharges through wall weep holes, pipe may be installed with a minimum slope of zero percent.
5. Landscaping Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
7. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.

B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.

C. Install ABS piping according to ASTM D 2321.

D. Install PE piping according to ASTM D 2321.

E. Install PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.

F. Install clay piping according to ASTM C 12 and NCPI's "Clay Pipe Engineering Manual."

G. Install concrete piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Handbook."

3.9 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings: Hub and spigot, with rubber compression gaskets according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook." Use gaskets that match class of pipe and fittings.

B. Join ABS pipe and fittings according to ASTM D 2751.

C. Join PE pipe, tubing, and fittings with couplings for soil-tight joints according to AASHTO's "Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges," Division II, Section 26.4.2.4, "Joint Properties."

D. Join perforated, PE pipe and fittings with couplings for soil-tight joints according to AASHTO's "Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges," Division II, Section 26.4.2.4, "Joint Properties"; or according to ASTM D 2321.

E. Join PVC pipe and fittings according to ASTM D 3034 with elastomeric seal gaskets according to ASTM D 2321.

F. Join perforated PVC pipe and fittings according to ASTM D 2729, with loose bell-and-spigot joints.

G. Join perforated clay pipe and fittings with gaskets according to ASTM C 425.

H. Join perforated concrete pipe and fittings with gaskets according to ASTM C 443.

I. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.

3.10 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

A. Cleanouts for Foundation Subdrainage:

1. Install cleanouts from piping to grade. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
2. In vehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 18 by 18 by 12 inches in depth. Set top of cleanout flush with grade. Cast-iron pipe may also be used for cleanouts in nonvehicular-traffic areas.
3. In nonvehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 PVC pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 12 by 12 by 4 inches in depth. Set top of cleanout plug 1 inch above grade.

B. Cleanouts for Underslab Subdrainage:

1. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from piping to top of slab. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
2. Use NPS 4 cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout flush with top of slab.

3.11 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to building's solid-wall-piping storm drainage system.

3.12 IDENTIFICATION

A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping.

1. Install PE warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Install detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: After installing drainage course to top of piping, test drain piping with water to ensure free flow before backfilling. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.

3.14 CLEANING

A. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 02620

SECTION 02630 - STORM DRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure storm drainage outside the building, with the following components:

1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
2. Backwater valves.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Drains.
5. Corrosion-protection piping encasement.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene-monomer rubber.

C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

D. LLDPE: Linear low-density, polyethylene plastic.

E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

H. RTRF: Glass-fiber-reinforced, thermosetting-resin fitting.

I. RTRP: Glass-fiber-reinforced, thermosetting-resin pipe.

J. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Drainage-Piping. Pipe joints shall be at least silttight, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Special pipe fittings.
2. Backwater valves.
3. Drains.
4. Channel drainage systems.
5. Storage and leaching chambers.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.
2. Catch Basins and Stormwater Inlets Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames, covers, and grates.
3. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames and covers, design calculations, and concrete design-mix report.

C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.

D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.

B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

D. Handle catch basins and stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class.

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with ASTM A 666, Type 301, stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.

1. Manufacturers:

a. ANACO.
b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
c. Fernco Inc.
d. Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
f. Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.

2.5 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Corrugated-Steel Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 760/A 760M, Type I with fittings of similar form and construction as pipe.

1. Special-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel with O-ring seals.

2. Standard-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel.
3. Coating: Zinc.

2.6 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.

1. NPS 3 to NPS 6: SDR 35.
2. NPS 8 to NPS 12: SDR 42.
3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.7 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Corrugated PE Drainage Pipe and Fittings NPS 10 and Smaller: AASHTO M 252M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.

1. Silttight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with tube and fittings.
2. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 252M, corrugated, matching tube and fittings.
3. Corrugated PE Pipe and Fittings NPS 12 to NPS 48: AASHTO M 294M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
4. Silttight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with pipe and fittings.
5. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 294M, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

B. Corrugated PE Pipe and Fittings NPS 56 and NPS 60: AASHTO MP7, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.

1. Silttight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with pipe and fittings.
2. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO MP7, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

2.8 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Pressure Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 150, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

1. Fittings NPS 4 to NPS 8: PVC pressure fittings complying with AWWA C907, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
2. Fittings NPS 10 and Larger: Ductile-iron, compact fittings complying with AWWA C153, for push-on joints and using AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.

B. PVC Water-Service Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 pipe, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints with ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40, socket-type fittings.

C. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

D. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 18 and Larger: ASTM F 679, T-1 wall thickness, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.9 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76, with bell-and-spigot or groove and tongue ends.

1. Class III, Wall B, unless otherwise noted.

2.10 CLEANOUTS

A. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Canplas Inc.
b. IPS Corporation.
c. NDS Inc.
d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
f. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.

2.11 DRAINS

A. Gray-Iron Area Drains: ASME A112.21.1M, round body with anchor flange and round grate. Include bottom outlet with inside calk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
e. Watts Industries, Inc.
f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Heavy duty.

2.12 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

2.13 STORMWATER DETENTION STRUCTURES

A. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Stormwater Detention Structures: Construct of reinforced-concrete bottom, walls, and top; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.

1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete, as required to prevent flotation.
2. Grade Rings: Include 2 or 3 reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match 24-inch- diameter frame and cover.

B. Manhole Frames and Covers: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron castings designed for heavy-duty service. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch-diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering "STORM SEWER" cast into cover.

2.14 PIPE OUTLETS

A. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.

B. Riprap Basins: Broken, irregular size and shape, graded stone according to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control."

1. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-3, screen opening 2 inches.
2. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-4, screen opening 3 inches.
3. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-5, screen opening 5 inches.

C. Filter Stone: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. FS-2, No. 4 screen opening, average-size, graded stone.

D. Energy Dissipaters: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, 3-ton average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Special Pipe Fittings: Use for pipe expansion and deflection. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure Sewer Piping: Use the following pipe materials for each size range:

1. NPS 3: Hub-and-spigot, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. NPS 3: NPS 4 corrugated steel pipe and fittings, [standard] [special]-joint bands, and banded joints.
3. NPS 3: ABS, SDR 35, sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
4. NPS 3: Corrugated PE drainage pipe and fittings, soiltight couplings, and coupled joints.
5. NPS 3: PVC water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 40, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
6. NPS 3: NPS 4 PVC sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
7. NPS 3: NPS 4 Class [1] [2] [3], nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
8. NPS 4 and NPS 6: Corrugated steel pipe and fittings, standard -joint bands, and banded joints.
9. NPS 4 and NPS 6: ABS, SDR 35, sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
10. NPS 4 and NPS 6: Corrugated PE drainage pipe and fittings, couplings, and coupled joints.
11. NPS 4 and NPS 6: Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC sewer pipe fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
12. NPS 4 and NPS 6: PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
13. NPS 15: Corrugated steel pipe and fittings, standard-joint bands, and banded joints.
14. NPS 15: PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
15. NPS 15: Reinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
16. NPS 18 to NPS 36: Ductile-iron culvert pipe, ductile-iron standard [or compact] fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
17. NPS 18 to NPS 36: Reinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
18. All Sizes: High-density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe fittings, gasket joints, per ASTM D3034, soil-tight, double-wall, smooth interior.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.

D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.

F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:

1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
3. Install corrugated steel piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
4. Install ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

5. Install PE corrugated sewer piping according to CPPA's "Recommended Installation Practices for Corrugated Polycthylcnc Pipc and Fittings."
6. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
7. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Basic pipe joint construction is specified in Division 2 Section "Piped Utilities - Basic Materials and Methods." Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:

1. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
2. Join corrugated steel sewer piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
3. Join ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 2751 for elastomeric-seal joints.
4. Join corrugated PE piping according to CPPA 100 and the following:

    a. Use silttight couplings for Type 2, silttight joints.
    b. Use soiltight couplings for Type 1, soiltight joints.

5. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric gasket joints.
6. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.

C. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.5 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.

1. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.

B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inchesdeep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.

C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.6 STORMWATER INLET INSTALLATION

A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.

B. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.

C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.

D. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.

E. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

3.8 DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Assemble and install components according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.

C. Assemble channel sections to form slope down toward drain outlets. Use sealants, adhesives, fasteners, and other materials recommended by system manufacturer.

D. Embed channel sections and drainage specialties in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

E. Fasten grates to channel sections if indicated.

F. Assemble channel sections with flanged or interlocking joints.

G. Embed channel sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.9 STORMWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Chamber Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install system and backfill according to chamber manufacturer's written instructions. Include storage and leaching chambers, filtering material, and filter mat.

B. Piping Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install piping system, filter fabric, and backfill according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Division 15 Section "Storm Drainage Piping."

B. Connect force-main pressure piping to building's storm drainage force mains specified in Division 15 Section "Storm Drainage Piping." Terminate piping where indicated.

1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes and structures by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall, unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches

of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.

a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.

4. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

C. Connect to sediment interceptors specified in Division 2 Section "Interceptors."

3.11 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:

1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.

B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:

1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
2. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.

C. Backfill to grade according to Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

3.12 IDENTIFICATION

A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.

1. Use detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.

1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
2. Defects requiring correction include the following:

a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.

e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.

3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate report for each test.
5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:

a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.

C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.14 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with potable water.

END OF SECTION 02630

SECTION 02741 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cold milling of existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
3. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
4. Hot-mix asphalt paving overlay.
5. Asphalt surface treatments.
6. Pavement-marking paint.
7. Pre-cast concrete wheel stops

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 2 Sections for other paving installed as part of crosswalks in asphalt pavement areas.
2. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.
3. Division 2 Section "Pavement Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.

1.3 DEFINITION

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

1. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
2. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

C. Samples: For each paving fabric, 12 by 12 inches minimum.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Each paving fabric, 12 by 12 inches minimum.

2. Each pattern and color of precut marking material.

E. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.

F. Material Test Reports: For each paving material

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by Missouri Department of Transportation.

B. Installer Qualifications: Imprinted-asphalt manufacturer's authorized installer who is trained and approved for installation of imprinted asphalt required for this Project.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Missouri Standards Specifications for Highway Construction.

1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.

B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:

1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.

4. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
5. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-based materials or 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.

B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.

C. Fine Aggregate: AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof, in accordance with MODOT Section 1002.8.

1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.

D. Mineral Filler: AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO M 320 or AASHTO MP 1a, PG 70-22.

B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded material or ASTM D 946 for penetration-graded material.

C. Prime Coat: ASTM D 2027, medium-curing cutback asphalt, MC-30 or MC-70.

D. Prime Coat: Asphalt emulsion prime coat complying with MSSHC.

E. Tack Coat: AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

F. Fog Seal: AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

G. Water: Potable.

H. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141, pumping consistency.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.

B. Sand: AASHTO M 29, Grade Nos. 2 or 3.

C. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288, nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.

D. Joint Sealant: AASHTO M 324, Type I, II or III, Type IV] hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant.

E. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type F colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.

1. Color: White, Yellow, or As indicated.

F. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.

1. Color: White, Yellow, or As indicated.

G. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than [three] [45] minutes.

1. Color: White, Yellow, or As indicated.

H. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

I. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches high by 9 inches wide by 72 inches long. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.

1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4-inch diameter, 10-inch minimum length.

2.4 MIXES

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by MODOT and designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types."

1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
2. Provide mixes complying with composition, grading, and tolerance requirements in ASTM D 3515 for the following nominal, maximum aggregate sizes:

a. Base Course: 4 inch.
b. Surface Course: 2 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.

B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.

3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

C. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

D. Verify that utilities, traffic loop detectors, and other items requiring a cut and installation beneath the asphalt surface have been completed and that asphalt surface has been repaired flush with adjacent asphalt prior to beginning installation of imprinted asphalt.

3.2 COLD MILLING

A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.

1. Mill to a depth of 1-1/2 inches.
2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of excessive gouges, grooves, and ridges.
3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
4. Repair or replace curbs, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
6. Transport milled hot-mix asphalt to asphalt recycling facility.
7. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.

3.3 PATCHING

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.

B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.

1. Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.

C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

D. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

E. Patching: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

3.4 REPAIRS

A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.

1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.

B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.

1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.5 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.

B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.

1. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.

C. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gallon/sq. yd.. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure.

1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.6 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.

1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
3. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.

1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.

C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.7 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."
5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.8 COMPACTION

A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.

1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.

B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct lay-down and rolling operations to comply with requirements.

C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:

1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent nor greater than 100 percent.
2. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.

D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.

E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.

F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.

G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.9 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:

1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.

B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:

1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

3.10 SURFACE TREATMENTS

A. Fog Seals: Apply fog seal at a rate of 0.10 to 0.15 gallon/sq. yd. to existing asphalt pavement and allow to cure. With fine sand, lightly dust areas receiving excess fog seal.

B. Slurry Seals: Apply slurry coat in a uniform thickness according to ASTM D 3910 and allow to cure.

1. Roll slurry seal to remove ridges and provide a uniform, smooth surface.

3.11 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow paving to age for 30 days before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

1. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lbs/gallon

3.12 WHEEL STOPS

A. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Securely attach wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.

C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.

D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of un-compacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to AASHTO T 168.

1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.

    a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
    b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.

E. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.

F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.14 DISPOSAL

A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

END OF SECTION 02741

SECTION 02751 - CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:

1. Driveways and roadways.
2. Parking lots.
3. Curbs and gutters.
4. Walkways.
5. Unit paver base.
6. Exterior Pads.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.
2. Division 2 Section "Pavement Joint Sealants" for joint sealants of joints in concrete pavement and at isolation joints of concrete pavement with adjacent construction.
3. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture. Include alternate mixture designs when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

C. Samples: 10-lb sample of exposed aggregate.

D. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:

1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.

E. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
3. Fiber reinforcement.
4. Admixtures.
5. Curing compounds.
6. Applied finish materials.
7. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
8. Joint fillers.

F. Minutes of preinstallation conference

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.

C. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

D. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

E. Mockups: Cast mockups of full-size sections of concrete pavement to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, color, and standard of workmanship.

1. Build mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting construction.
4. Maintain approved mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed pavement.
5. Demolish and remove approved mockups from the site when directed by Architect.
6. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete pavement mixture design and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials and concrete pavement construction practices. Require representatives, including the following, of each entity directly concerned with concrete pavement, to attend conference:

a. Contractor's superintendent.
b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
d. Concrete pavement subcontractor.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

1. Protect pavement from traffic during construction which could damage the pavement or mar the surface.
2. Replace damaged sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FORMS

A. Form Materials: Dimension lumber, plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.

1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.

B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

B. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.

C. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, plain steel.

D. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.

E. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed bars.

F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed bars.

G. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed bars; assembled with clips.

H. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.

I. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.

J. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain steel bars, ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

K. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain steel bars.

L. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

M. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against pavement form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.

N. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:

1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

O. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid two-part epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.

P. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or I/II, gray. Supplement with the following:

   a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
   b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag, or IP, portland-pozzolan cement.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.

D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

E. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.

B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

C. Water: Potable.

D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

1. Products:

a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
b. Burke by Edeco; BurkeFilm.
c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Aquafilm.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
j. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Confilm.
k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
o. Symons Corporation; Finishing Aid.
p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.

E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

1. Products:

a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
b. Burke by Edoko; Aqua Resin Cure.
c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
l. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem Clear.
m. Tamms Industries Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

F. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.

1. Products:

a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 WP WB.
b. Burke by Edoco; Resin Emulsion White.
c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure 2000.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem White Pigmented Cure (J-10-W).
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez VOX White Pigmented.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 450.
h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-White.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R-2.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1200-White.
k. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem White.
l. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Horncure 200-W.
m. Unitex; Hydro White.
n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure White 100.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.

B. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Bayer Corporation.
b. ChemMasters.
c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.
d. Davis Colors.
e. Elementis Pigments, Inc.
f. Hoover Color Corporation.

g. Lambert Corporation.
h. Scofield, L. M.Company.
i. Solomon Colors.

2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery with emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.

D. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

E. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to requirements, and as follows:

1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

F. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid-set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.

1. Products:

a. Burke by Edeco; True Etch Surface Retarder.
b. ChemMasters; Exposee.
c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Delay S.
d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Surface Retarder S.
e. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Expose.
f. Metalcrete Industries; Surftard.
g. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Crete-Nox TA.
h. Scofield, L. M. Company; Lithotex.
i. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Rugasol-S.
j. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Envioset.

G. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.

1. Products:

a. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Conshake 600 Colortone.
b. Dayton Superior Corporation; Quartz Tuff.
c. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Surflex.
d. Lambert Corporation; Colorhard.
e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Quartz Plate FF.
f. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Mastercron.
g. Metalcrete Industries; Floor Quartz.
h. Scofield, L. M. Company; Lithochrome Color Hardener.
i. Symons Corporation; Hard Top.

2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-115, Type I or AASHTO M 248, Type N.

1. Color: White, Yellow, or As indicated.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than 3 minutes.

1. Color: White, Yellow, or As indicated.

C. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.

1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.

B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:

1. Air Content: 5 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size

D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use plasticizing and retarding admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:

1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

G. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.

1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.

1. For concrete mixes of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
2. For concrete mixes larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.

B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.

1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
3. Subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/4 inch require correction according to requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

C. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.

B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.

C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.

D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

E. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.

F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.

G. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap of adjacent mats.

3.5 JOINTS

A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.

1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.

1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide tie bars at sides of pavement strips where indicated.
3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.

1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.

4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.

D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 3/8-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 3/8-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.

B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.

C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.

D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.

E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site.

F. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.

G. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.

H. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.

1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, embedded or cast in items and joint devices.

I. Place concrete in two operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay welded wire fabric or fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.

1. Remove and replace concrete that has been placed for more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer, or use bonding agent if approved by Architect.

J. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.

K. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

L. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not approved, remove and replace with formed concrete.

M. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.

1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.

N. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until pavement has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.

O. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.

P. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.

B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.

1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

3.8 SPECIAL FINISHES

A. Monolithic Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Expose coarse aggregate in pavement surfaces as follows:

1. Immediately after float finishing, spray-apply chemical surface retarder to pavement according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Cover pavement surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove when ready to continue finishing operations.
3. Without dislodging aggregate, remove excess mortar by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom.
4. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat water flushing and brushing cycle until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.

B. Seeded Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Immediately after initial floating, spread a single layer of aggregate uniformly on pavement surface. Tamp aggregate into plastic concrete, and float finish to entirely embed aggregate with mortar cover of 1/16 inch.

1. Spray-apply chemical surface retarder to pavement according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Cover pavement surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove sheeting when ready to continue finishing operations.
3. Without dislodging aggregate, remove excess mortar by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom.
4. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat water flushing and brushing cycle until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.

C. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to pavement surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Uniformly spread dry-shake hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft., unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match pavement color required.
2. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over pavement surface with mechanical spreader, allow to absorb moisture, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second dry-shake hardener application, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed by power floating.
3. After final floating, apply a hand-trowel finish followed by a broom finish to concrete.
4. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.

3.9 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.

C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.

E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:

1. Moist Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:

   a. Water.
   b. Continuous water-fog spray.
   c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.10 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:

1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
2. Thickness: Plus 1/4 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.
6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.11 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow concrete pavement to cure for 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

1. Spread glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.

a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.

a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.

C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3 consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.

G. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.13 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.

B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.

C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 02751

SECTION 02764 - PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Expansion and contraction joints within cement concrete pavement.
2. Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
2. Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for constructing joints in concrete pavement.
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing nontraffic and traffic joints in locations not specified in this Section.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

B. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:

1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for sealants

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of experienced installers.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing of current sealant products within a 36-month period preceding the commencement of the Work.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.

B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
2. When joint substrates are wet or covered with frost.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

A. Type NS Silicone Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, nonsag silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type NS.

1. Available Products:

a. Crafco Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone.
b. Dow Corning Corporation; 888.

B. Type SL Silicone Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, self-leveling silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type SL.

1. Available Products:

a. Crafco Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.

2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

2.5 PRIMERS

A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.

F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 02764

SECTION 02900 - LANDSCAPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Seeding.
2. Turf renovation.

1.3 GENERAL

A. Submittals: In addition to product certificates, submit the following:

1. Certification of grass seed from seed vendor for each seed mixture.

B. Maintain and establish lawns and plants by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and other operations to produce a uniformly smooth lawn for not less than the following:

1. Seeded Lawns: 60 days after date of Substantial Completion.
2. All areas damaged by construction shall be put back in original condition by hand raking and seeding prior to final acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with the Association of Official Seed Analysts' "Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.

1. Seed Mixture: All grass planted shall be of a mixture of 1/3 bluegrass, 1/3 fine fescue and 1/3 annual rye.

B. Topsoil: ASTM D 5268, pH range of 5.5 to 7.4 percent organic material minimum, free of stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Provide a minimum of 6" in thickness over disturbed areas.

1. Topsoil Source: Reuse surface soil stockpiled on the site. Verify suitability of surface soil to produce topsoil meeting requirements and amend when necessary. Supplement with imported topsoil when quantities are insufficient. Clean topsoil of roots, plants, sods, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Seeding Lawns: Sow seed with a spreader or a seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in 2 directions at right angles to each other. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch of topsoil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.

1. Seeding Rate: 3 to 4 lb per 1000 sq. ft.

B. Protect seeded areas with slopes less than 1:6 against erosion by spreading straw mulch after completion of seeding operations and anchor by crimping into topsoil. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons per acre.

C. Disposal: Remove waste material, including unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 02900

SECTION 03300 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:

1. Footings.
2. Foundation walls.
3. Slabs-on-grade.
4. Suspended slabs.
5. Concrete toppings.
6. Building frame members.
7. Building walls.
8. Equipment pads and bases.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
2. Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for concrete pavement and walks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:

1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.

F. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Form materials and form-release agents.
4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
5. Waterstops.
6. Curing compounds.
7. Floor and slab treatments.
8. Bonding agents.
9. Adhesives.
10. Vapor retarders.
11. Semi-rigid joint filler.
12. Joint-filler strips.
13. Repair materials.

G. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.

H. Minutes of preinstallation conference

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed concrete Work similar in material, design and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.

E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.

F. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."

G. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:

1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

H. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

a. Contractor's superintendent.
b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
d. Concrete subcontractor.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.

2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:

a. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.

B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

D. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

E. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.

F. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

G. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

H. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

B. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82.

C. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:

1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II, gray

a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33 and as specified, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: ¾-inch.
2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.6 ADMIXTURES

A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

C. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.

1. Available Products:

a. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.; Boral BCN.
b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucon CIA.
c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI.
d. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheocrete CNI.
e. Sika Corporation; Sika CNI.

D. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.

1. Available Products:

a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Catexol 1000CI.
b. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.; Boral BCN2.
c. Cortec Corporation; MCI 2000. 2005NS.
d. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI-S.
e. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheocrete 222+.
f. Sika Corporation; FerroGard-901.

2.7 WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.

1. Available Manufacturers:

a. Greenstreak.
b. Progress Unlimited, Inc.
c. Williams Products, Inc.

2.8 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

1. Available Products:

a. Fortifiber Corporation; Moistop Ultra A.
b. Raven Industries Inc.; Vapor Block 10.

B. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

C. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 448, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a 3/8-inch sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 sieve, and at least 5 percent passing No. 200 sieve; complying with deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.

2.9 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

1. Available Products:

a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
b. Burke by Edoco; BurkeFilm.
c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Aquafilm.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.

i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
j. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; Confilm.
k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
o. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Finishing Aid.
p. Unitex; Pro-Film.
q. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Monofilm ER.
r. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.

B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

D. Water: Potable.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

1. Available Products:

a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
b. Burke by Edoco; Aqua Resin Cure.
c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; W.B. Resin Cure.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
l. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Resi-Chem Clear Cure.
m. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
o. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Maxcure Resin Clear.
p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, non-dissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.

1. Available Products:

a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Clear Cure WB.
b. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II.
c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure & Seal 20.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Cure and Seal WB.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-18).
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Aqua Cure VOX.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Cure & Seal 309 Emulsion.

h. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure.
l. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Cure & Seal 150E.
m. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
n. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB 150.
o. Unitex; Hydro Seal.
p. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Hydrasheen 15 percent
q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 309.

G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, non-dissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.

1. Available Products:

a. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II 20 Percent.
b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; High Seal.
d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-19).
e. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Diamond Clear VOX.
f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureCure Emulsion.
g. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
i. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; MasterKure-N-Seal VOC.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 0800.
l. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Cure & Seal 200E.
m. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex; Kure-N-Seal.
n. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
o. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB STD.
p. Unitex; Hydro Seal 18.
q. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Radiance UV-25
r. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 0800.

H. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

1. Available Products:

a. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315.
b. ChemMasters; Spray-Cure & Seal Plus.
c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Sealcure 1315.
d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Cure and Seal (J-22UV).
e. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Diamond Clear.
f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Sure Cure 25.
g. Lambert Corporation; UV Super Seal.
h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal Plus.
i. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; CS-309/30.
j. Metalcrete Industries; Seal N Kure 0.
k. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex; Kure-N-Seal 5.
l. Tamms Industries, Inc.; LusterSeal 300.

m. Unitex; Solvent Seal 1315.
n. US Mix Products Company; US Spec CS-25
o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex AC 1315

I. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

1. Available Products:

a. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315 WB.
b. ChemMasters; Polyseal WB.
c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Sealcure 1315 WB.
d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Diamond Clear VOX.
e. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Sure Cure 25 Emulsion.
f. Lambert Corporation; UV Safe Seal.
g. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal WB Plus.
h. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-30.
i. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 30.
j. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 31 Percent E.
k. Tamms Industries, Inc.; LusterSeal WB 300.
l. Unitex; Hydro Seal 25.
m. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Radiance UV-25.
n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Vexcon Starseal 1315.

2.10 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber

B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:

1. Types I and II, non-load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

D. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

E. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

2.11 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.

3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.

1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.

B. Cementitious Materials:

1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.

C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

E. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

2.13 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.52.
3. Slump Limit: 5 inches, 8 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery.

B. Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, 8 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery

C. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 520 lbs/cubic yard.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent

D. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum Water-Cementations Materials Ratio: 540 lbs/cubic yard.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent

2.14 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.15 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:

1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
2. Class B, 1/2 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.

1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 SHORES AND RESHORES

A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and re-shoring.

1. Do not remove shoring or re-shoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.

B. In multistory construction, extend shoring or re-shoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.

C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and re-shore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate re-shoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

3.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.

1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.

C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.

D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.6 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.

6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.7 WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.

B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.

C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.

1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:

1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces to receive a rubbed finish.

C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated by architect:

1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.

D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, re-straightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in 1 direction.

1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated.

C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Re-straighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and re-straightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated.

D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and re-straighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.

1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated.

2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:

   a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and of levelness, F(L) 15.

E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.

1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.

F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.

D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:

   a. Water.
   b. Continuous water-fog spray.
   c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

   a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
   b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
   c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

   a. After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.13 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
2. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.

B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.

D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, pop-outs, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.

F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. General Contractor shall pay all costs associated with these tests and inspections.

B. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.

    a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.

    a. Cast and laboratory cure one set of four (4) standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one (1) specimen at seven (7) days and two (2) specimens at twenty-eight (28) days, hold one (1) specimen in reserve.

    a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two (2) specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at twenty-eight (28) days.

7. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine

adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

C. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 as soon as possible after concrete placement, and within 72 hours of concrete placement within hours of finishing.

END OF SECTION 03300

SECTION 04090 – MASONRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Masonry accessories including the following:

1. Open mesh built-in no-clog drainage mats to collect and suspend mortar droppings in masonry cavity walls. At bottom of cavity walls and above wall openings where there are 6 or more brick courses above the lintel.
2. Corrugated Plastic Vertical Weep Vents for masonry walls. At bottom of cavity walls and above wall openings where there are 6 or more brick courses above the lintel.
3. Rubberized Asphaltic Flashing for masonry walls at bottom of cavity walls and above wall openings where there are 6 or more brick courses above the lintel.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 04810 – Unit Masonry Assemblies: Additional masonry assembly requirements.

B. Section 07190 - Water Repellents: Masonry wall coatings.

C. Section 07210 – Building Insulation

F. Section 07920 – Joint Sealants

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:

1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
2. Storage, handling requirements and recommendations.

B. Verification Samples: For each Mortar Net WeepVent or CellVent specified, two samples representing actual product, color, and configuration.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Minimum 2 years experience with similar masonry installations.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

B. Protect products from exposure to direct sunlight.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturer for Open Mesh Built-in No-clog Drainage Mats: Mortar Net Solutions (Wall Defender); and Hohmann & Barnard Inc. (Mortar Trap)

B. Acceptable Manufacturer for Corrugated Vertical Weep Vents for masonry wall: Mortar Net Solutions (CellVent); and Hohmann & Barnard Inc. (QV-Quadro Vent)

C. Acceptable Manufacturer for Rubberized Asphaltic Flashing for masonry walls: Mortar Net Solutions; and Hohmann & Barnard Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Open mesh built-in no-clog drainage mats to collect and suspend mortar droppings in masonry cavity walls:

1. Description: 90 percent open weave mesh in trapezoidal configuration connected by continuous bottom strip 3 inches high, no insect barrier.
2. 1 inch thick by 10 inches high, partial recycled nylon material.

B. Corrugated Vertical Weep vents for masonry walls: UV stable polypropylene copolymer, rectangular in shape.

1. Description: Cells with cross sections of approximately 5/64 (0.080) inches by 1/8 (0.0120 inches) by the full length of the vent formed by a multilayered structure of thin polypropylene sheets.
2. Standard Size: 2 1/2 inches high by 3/8 inches thick by 3 3/8 inches long.
3. Color: Match mortar color with selection from manufacturer's standard colors.

a. Available colors: White, Brown, Tan, Gray, Black, Cocoa, Clear

C. Rubberized Asphaltic Flashing for masonry walls:

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.

B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify owner's agent and architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Open mesh built-in no-clog drainage mats to collect and suspend mortar droppings in commercial masonry cavity walls: Install in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as follows:

1. Verify installation of flashing and completion of first two courses of masonry.
2. Extend flashing from the bottom of the drainage mat to at least 6 inches above the top of the drainage mat to prevent mortar bridging between the outer wythe and inner wall.
3. Remove mortar droppings and debris from flashing and weep vents.

4. Install one continuous row of drainage mats at base of wall in cavity and over all wall openings (where there are 6 or more courses of brick above the lintel) directly on flashing, with dovetail profile facing upward. For wall cavities that exceed 11 feet in height, place an additional continuous trapezoidal strip on wall reinforcing anchors/ties at every 9 feet to 11 feet of wall height.
5. Butt ends together. Compress slightly if necessary.

B. Corrugated Vertical Weep vents for masonry walls: Install in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as follows:

1. Place vent in an open head joint at the flashing level.
2. Insert a vent at a maximum of 24 inches on center in open head joints.
3. Clean flashing and weep vents free of mortar droppings and debris.
4. Align exterior face of insert with exterior plane of mortar.
5. For head joints taller than height of mesh insert, use custom manufactured product to match head joint.

C. Rubberized Asphaltic Flashing for masonry walls:

1. Install in conjunction with open mesh built-in no-clog drainage mats and corrugated vertical weep vents.
2. Install at base of cavity walls
3. Install at openings in walls, when there are 6 or more courses of brick above the lintel
4. Install flashing with 6" lap minimum at straight runs
5. Install flashing with 12" lap at building corners
6. Double-up flashing at building corners

3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from damage until completion of project.

B. Repair or replace damaged products before covering with construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04720 - CAST STONE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Cast stone trim including the following:

a. Cast stone caps atop column bases at entry canopy.

b. Cast stone trim separating materials at exterior of building

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section "Simulated Stone" for installing cast stone caps atop simulated stone bases.
2. Division 7 Section "Water Repellents" for penetrating water-repellent coatings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cast Stone: Architectural precast concrete building units intended to simulate natural cut stone.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for cast stone units.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.

1. Include building plans and or elevations as required to show layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit samples of Cast Stone that are representative of the general range of colors and finishes available.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches square in size.

E. Full-Size Mockup Samples: Furnish sample units for installation in mockup specified in Division 4 Section "Stone Masonry".

F. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C 1364

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, with sufficient design and production capacity to manufacture required units.

B. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with stone masonry work to minimize the need for on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.

B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.

1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.
2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.

C. Store installation materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CAST STONE MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364 and the following:

B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.

C. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33, gradation as needed to produce required textures and colors as needed to produce required cast stone colors.

D. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

E. Admixtures: Do not use admixtures unless specified or approved in writing by Architect.

1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260. Add to mixes for units exposed to the exterior at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in an air content of 4 to 6 percent, except do not add to zero-slump concrete mixes.
4. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
5. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
6. Water-Reducing, Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.

F. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615/A 615M Grade 60. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast stone material.

G. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

2.3 CAST STONE UNITS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Advanced Cast Stone, Inc.
2. AHI Supply, Inc.
3. American Artstone Co., Inc.
4. Architectural Art Stone, Inc.
5. Architectural Cast Stone Corp.
6. Architectural Cast Stone, Inc.
7. Arkansas Precast Corporation.
8. Classic Cast Stone of Dallas, Inc.
9. Continental Cast Stone Manufacturing, Inc.
10. Dallas Cast Stone Co., Inc.
11. Fritchman & Associates Cast Stone.
12. Precision Development.
13. Siteworks, Inc.
14. Southern Cast Stone Manufacturing, Inc.
15. Stone Castle Industries, Inc.
16. Stone Legends Div.; C.S.C.S., Inc.

B. Provide cast stone units complying with ASTM C 1364 using the vibrant dry tamp or wet-cast method.

1. Provide units that are resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364, or are made from cast stone that has a history of successful resistance to freezing and thawing.

C. Fabricate units with sharp arris and details accurately reproduced with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
3. Provide drips on projecting elements, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.

E. Cure units by one of the following methods:

1. Cure units with steam in enclosed curing room at temperature of 105 deg F or above and 95 to 100 percent relative humidity for 6 hours.
2. Cure units with dense fog and water spray in enclosed warm curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity for 24 hours.
3. Cure units to comply with one of the following:

a. Not less than 5 days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
b. Not less than 6 days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F or above.
c. Not less than 7 days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.
d. Not less than 8 days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F or above.

F. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

G. Colors and Textures: Provide units with fine-grained texture as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

2.4 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Provide mortar materials that comply with Division 4 Section "Stone Masonry."

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

B. Dowels: Round stainless-steel bars complying with ASTM A 276, Type 304, and 1/2-inch diameter.

C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Provide products that comply with Division 4 Section "Stone Masonry."

2.6 MORTAR MIXES

A. Comply with requirements in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for mortar mixes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of cast stone.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

A. Install cast stone units to comply with requirements in Division 4 Section "Stone Masonry."

B. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.

1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.

C. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.

D. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints, unless otherwise indicated.

1. If not indicated, set units with joints 3/8 to 1/2 inch wide.
2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
6. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.

E. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.

F. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.

G. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Provide expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints of widths and at locations indicated. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.

1. Form open joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.

I. Prepare joints indicated to receive sealant and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

1. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Install cast stone units to comply with requirements in Division 4 Section "Stone Masonry.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Comply with requirements in Division 4 Section "Stone Masonry."

3.5 EXCESS MATERIALS AND WASTE

A. Comply with requirements in Division 4 Section "Stone Masonry."

END OF SECTION 04720

SECTION 04810 - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:

1. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
2. Face brick (color and style to match existing)
3. Mortar and grout.
4. Reinforcing steel.
5. Masonry joint reinforcement.
6. Ties and anchors.
7. Embedded flashing.
8. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section “Cast Stone” for units to be installed under this Section.
2. Division 7 Section "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry assemblies and Cast Stone.
3. Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping at openings in masonry walls.
4. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing control and expansion joints in unit masonry.

C. Products installed, but not furnished, under this Section include the following:

1. Cast-stone trim, furnished under Division 4 Section "Cast Stone."
2. Simulated stone, furnished under Division 4 Section “Simulated Stone”
3. Steel lintels and shelf angles for unit masonry, furnished under Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

1. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:

1. Face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks.

2. Face Brick & exposed CMU: Color and Style to match existing

D. Material Certificates: Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards. Provide for each type and size of the following:

1. Masonry units.

a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
b. For Concrete Masonry Units used in assemblies with fire-resistance ratings provide certificates indicating compliance with UL-618 or UL-263.
c. For bricks, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
d. For exposed brick, include material test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.

2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
3. Reinforcing bars.
4. Joint reinforcement.
5. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.

E. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

1. Include test reports, per ASTM C 780, for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification.
2. Include test reports, per ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

F. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.

B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

C. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for mockups.

1. Build sample panels for typical exterior wall in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness.
2. Clean one-half of exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
3. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of

workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.

a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
2. Where 1 wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.

B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.

D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to exceed tolerances and to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not uses units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMUs)

A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:

1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi.
2. Weight Classification: Normal weight.
3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.

2.4 BRICK

A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:

1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.

B. Face Brick: ASTM C 216 or ASTM C652, Grade SW, Type FBS.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi.
2. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
4. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches wide by 2-1/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.
5. Application: Use where brick is exposed, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Manufacturers

1. Boral Brick
2. Acme

D. Face Brick Color & Style: to match existing

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

C. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.

D. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

E. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.

B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951.

1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
3. Wire Size for Side Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch diameter.
4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch diameter.
5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: W1.7 or 0.148-inch diameter.
6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.

C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in subsequent paragraphs that are made from materials that comply with eight subparagraphs below, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches parallel to face of veneer.

C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches wide.

1. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units or hollow units laid with cells horizontal.
2. Where wythes do not align or are of different materials, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches.
3. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.

D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors

1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to metal studs, and as follows:

    a. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.

2. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.

    a. Anchor Section: Sheet metal plate, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 3-5/8 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
    b. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
    c. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.188-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
    d. Products:

        1) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 210 with D/A 700-708.
        2) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; 315-D with 316.
        3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; DW-10HS.

2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch thick not less than 0.015 inch thick.

2. Metal Drip Edges: Fabricate from stainless steel, provide preformed inside and outside corners. Extend at least 1-1/2 inches into wall and 3/8 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed. Provide backer rod and sealant where indicated or required.

B. Flexible Flashing: For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch.

a. Available Products:

1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
2) Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing.
3) Illinois Products Corporation; IPCO Wall Flashing.
4) Henry Company; Blueskin TWF.
5) Polyguard Products, Inc.; Polyguard 300.
6) Tamko Waterproofing; TW-Thru-Wall Flashing.

C. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:

1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
2. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

D. Termination Bar: Aluminum or Stainless Steel, 1/8 inch thick, 1-1/2 inch wide, in 8 foot lengths with hole placement not less than 16 inches on center.

E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Weep/Vent Products: Use the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's full range of colors standard.

a. Products:

1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Maze weep vent.
2) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Cell Vents.
3) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 85 Cell Vent.
4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Quadro-Vent.
5) Wire-Bond; Cell Vent.
6) Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Sandell's Cell Vent.

B. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.

1. Provide one of the following configurations:

a. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches wide, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
b. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.

2. Available Products:

a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break II.
b. Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
e. Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Sandell's Mortar Web.

C. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.

1. Available Products:

a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 810, D/A 812 or D/A 817.
b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.
c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.
d. Wire-Bond; O-Ring or Double O-Ring Rebar Positioner.

2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS

A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

1. Basis-of-Design Product:

a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc. 202 Masonry Detergent Cleaner
b. ProSoCo Inc. Sure Klean Trol (1:6)

2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement and lime.
3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.

B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.

1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.

C. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
2. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.

B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.

B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.

C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.

D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.

1. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.

F. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

G. Comply with construction tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:

1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
2. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
3. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
4. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch. Do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
5. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
6. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
7. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond unless otherwise indicated; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.

D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

E. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.

F. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay hollow brick and concrete masonry units as follows:

1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

B. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.

1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
2. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.

C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.

1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings.

    a. Reinforcement above is in addition to continuous reinforcement.

B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.

D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.6 ANCHORING MASONRY VENEERS

A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:

1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated or required. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
2. Embed tie sections in masonry joints. Provide air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and 24 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than 1 anchor for each 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 8 inches, around perimeter.

3.7 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows:

1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of concrete masonry units on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces to depth of not less than 3/4 inch before setting mortar has hardened for application of backer rod and sealant.

C. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:

1. Rake out expansion joints for backer rod and sealant to depth of not less than 3/4 inch before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints to uniform depths with square and clean sides.

D. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch.

1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.8 LINTELS

A. Install steel lintels where indicated.

B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 FLASHING, CAVITY DRAINAGE, AND VENTS

A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.

B. Install flashing as follows, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across air space behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches; with upper edge tucked under building paper or building wrap, lapping at least 4 inches and secured with continuous termination bar anchored at not less than 16 inches on center.
3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
4. Install metal drip edges, including preformed inside and outside corners beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge. Install backer rod and sealant where indicated or required.

C. Install Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent vents in head joints in exterior wythes. Use specified weep/vent products to form vents.

1. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and at top of wall in head joints of second course below top of wall.
2. Space vents 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.

1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.

B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.

1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged cast stone units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.

C. Replace cast stone units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.

D. Cast Stone In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.

1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.

E. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.

F. Unit Masonry In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

G. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.

5. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Clean cast stone to comply with supplier's written instructions.

3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04810

SECTION 05120 - STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Structural steel.
2. Grout.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
2. Division 5 Section "Steel Deck" for field installation of shear connectors.
3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
4. Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific requirements for work and coordination that refer to this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
2. Include embedment drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pre-tensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
5. Include details for coordination with specific requirements of other Sections.
6. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer/fabricator.

E. Mill Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:

1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
3. Direct-tension indicators.
4. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
5. Shear stud connectors.
6. Shop primers.
7. Nonshrink grout.

F. Source quality-control test reports

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CASE CSE.

1. If Installer does not participate in the AISC Quality Certification Program the Installer shall comply with the definition of "Experienced" as indicated in Section 01400 - Quality Requirements, Article 1.3, Paragraph J. Installer shall comply with applicable provisions of the specifications and documents referenced in this Section.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category Cbd Sbd.

1. If Fabricator does not participate in the AISC Quality Certification Program the Fabricator shall comply with the definition of "Experienced" as indicated in Section 01400 - Quality Requirements, Article 1.3, Paragraph J. Fabricator shall comply with applicable provisions of the specifications and documents referenced in this Section.

C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P2 or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."

1. If Applicator is not qualified as indicated above the Applicator shall comply with the definition of "Experienced" as indicated in Section 01400 - Quality Requirements, Article 1.3, Paragraph J. Applicator shall comply with applicable provisions of the specifications and documents referenced in this Section.

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
2. AISC's "Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings" and "Supplement No. 2."
3. AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design and Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
4. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
5. AISC's "Specification for Allowable Stress Design of Single-Angle Members and Specification for Load and Resistance Factor Design of Single-Angle Members."
6. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.

1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and re-lubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.

B. Channels, Angles, M, S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M..

C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

D. Corrosion-Resisting Structural Steel: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50.

E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B (Fy=46 ksi).

F. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847, structural tubing.

G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Weight Class: Standard, U.N.O.
2. Finish: Black, except where indicated to be galvanized.

H. Medium-Strength Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 65-35, carbon steel.

I. High-Strength Steel Castings: ASTM A 148/A 148M, Grade 80-50, carbon or alloy steel.

J. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain.
2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 compressible-washer type.

    a. Finish: Plain.

B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers, plain.

1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type, plain.

C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.

D. Un-headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.

1. Configuration: Hooked.
2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
4. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
5. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

E. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
4. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

F. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

G. Turnbuckles: ASTM A 108, Grade 1035, cold-finished carbon steel.

H. Eye Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1030, cold-finished carbon steel.

I. Sleeve Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1018, cold-finished carbon steel.

2.3 PRIMER

A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.

B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20.

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design and Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."

1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
4. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.

1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.

C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.

H. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk, cross-recessed head machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

I. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.

1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
3. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.

a. Grind butt welds flush.
b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
5. Galvanized surfaces.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

D. Painting: Apply a 1-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

2.8 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/ A 123M.

1. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.
2. Galvanize lintels and shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design and Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."

B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.

1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel and architecturally exposed structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated.

F. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.

G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Engineer. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.

H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design and Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.

    a. Grind butt welds flush.
    b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections. General Contractor shall pay all costs associated with these tests and inspections.

B. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.

1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:

1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.

E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

END OF SECTION 05120

SECTION 05310 - STEEL DECK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Composite steel floor deck.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill and reinforcing steel.
2. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop-welded shear connectors.
3. Division 9 Section "Painting" for touchup and repair painting of deck.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each type of deck, accessory, and product specified.

C. Shop drawings showing layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1. For steel deck indicated to comply with certain design loadings, include structural analysis data sealed and signed by the qualified professional engineer who was responsible for its preparation.

D. Product certificates signed by manufacturers of steel deck certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.

E. Welder certificates signed by Contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements specified under the "Quality Assurance" Article.

F. Product test reports from qualified independent testing agencies evidencing compliance with requirements of the following based on comprehensive testing:

1. Mechanical fasteners.

G. Research reports or evaluation reports of the model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidence steel deck's compliance with the building code in effect for the Project.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed steel deck similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: To qualify for acceptance, an independent testing agency must demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on evaluation of agency-submitted criteria conforming to ASTM E 699, that it has the experience and capability to satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.

C. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--Steel" and AWS D1.3 "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck panels identical to those tested as part of an assembly for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspection agency performing testing and follow-up services, that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As indicated by design designations listed in UL "Fire Resistance Directory," or by Warnock Hersey or another testing and inspecting agency.
2. Labeling: Identify steel deck with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

E. Electrical Raceway Panels: Provide UL-labeled, cellular metal floor deck panels conforming to UL 209 and listed in UL "Electrical Construction Materials Directory" as approved for use with standard header ducts and outlets for electrical distribution systems.

F. FM Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by Factory Mutual and listed in Factory Mutual "Approval Guide" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-60 windstorm ratings.

G. Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer legally authorized to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated that have resulted in the installation of steel deck similar to this Project in material, design, and extent and that have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in acoustic deck ribs with related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that the insulation is protected against damage from effects of the weather and other causes.

B. Coordinate installation of trench headers, preset inserts, and duct fittings in cellular metal floor deck with related units of Work specified in other Sections prior to casting concrete slab.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Buildings Co.
2. ASC Pacific Inc.
3. Bowman Metal Deck Armco, Inc.
4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
5. Epic Metals Corp.
6. Marlyn Steel Products, Inc.
7. Robertson A United Dominion Co.
8. Roof Deck, Inc.
9. United Steel Deck, Inc.
10. Verco Manufacturing Co.
11. Vulcraft Div. of Nucor Corp.
12. Walker Div. of Butler Manufacturing Co.
13. Wheeling Corrugating Co., Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corp.

2.2 FLOOR DECK **(Note: If Steel deck receives sprayed-on fireproofing, steel deck shall be galvanized not primed or painted)**

A. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, conforming to SDI Publication No. 28 "Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," the minimum section properties indicated, and the following:

1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 446, Grade A, G 6 zinc coated according to ASTM A 525.
2. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches .
3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 20 gage.
4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide accessory materials for steel deck that comply with requirements indicated and recommendations of the steel deck manufacturer.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, powder-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

C. Side Lap Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard button punch, where permitted by drawings.

D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, of same material as deck panels, and of thickness and profile indicated.

E. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material and thickness as deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Recessed Sump Pans: Manufacturer's standard size, single piece steel sheet 0.071-inch- thick minimum, of same material as deck panels, with 1-1/2-inch- minimum deep level recessed pans and 3-inch- wide flanges. Cut holes for drains in the field.

G. Flat Receiver Pan: Manufacturer's standard size, single-piece steel sheet, 0.071-inch- thick minimum units, of same material as deck panels. Cut holes for drains in the field.

H. Steel Sheet Accessories: ASTM A 446, G 60 coating class, galvanized according to ASTM A 525.

I. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting framing and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of steel deck.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Do not place deck panels on concrete supporting structure and/or load-bearing concrete-filled CMU brick walls until concrete has cured and is dry.

B. Locate decking bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary of SDI Publication No. 28, manufacturer's recommendations, and requirements of this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels when required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Place deck panels on supporting framing and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting framing before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side lap interlocks.

1. Align cellular deck panels for entire length of run of cells and align cells at ends of abutting panels.

D. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting framing without warp or deflection.

E. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to the decking.

F. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of decking, and support of other work.

G. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

H. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 FLOOR DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten floor deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:

1. Weld Diameter: 1/2 inch , nominal.
2. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated.
3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.

B. Side Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, or at intervals noted on drawings, using one of the following methods:

1. Mechanically clinch or button punch.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting framing with a minimum end bearing of 2, with end joints as follows:

1. End Joints: Lapped.

D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Floor Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck according to SDI recommendations to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of decking. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of floor deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Maintain smooth cellular raceway interiors free of welds or mechanical fasteners.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: A qualified independent testing agency employed and paid by Owner will perform field quality-control testing.

B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

D. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

E. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

F. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and the manufacturer's instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: Wire brush, clean, and paint scarred areas, welds, and rust spots on both surfaces of installed deck panels.

1. Touch up painted surfaces with same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces.
2. Where shop-painted surfaces are exposed in-service, apply touchup paint to blend into adjacent surfaces.

C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, abraded areas, and rust spots, as required after erection and before proceeding with field painting, are included in Division 9 Section "Painting."

D. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure steel decking is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05310

SECTION 05400 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
2. Interior load-bearing wall framing.
3. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
4. Note: Refer to Section 09111 "Non-Load Bearing Steel Framing" for interior non-load-bearing wall framing

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
2. Division 9 Section "Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing including supplementary framing and blocking.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Design Loads: As indicated.
2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:

a. Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.
b. Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lb./sq. ft..
c. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height.
d. Interior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height.

3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:

a. Upward and downward movement of 1/2 inch.

B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."

1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

1. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:

1. Steel sheet.
2. Expansion anchors.
3. Power-actuated anchors.
4. Mechanical fasteners.
5. Vertical deflection clips.
6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

F. Research/Evaluation Reports: For cold-formed metal framing

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.

D. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.

E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

G. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."

1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."

H. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."

I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:

1. AllSteel Products, Inc.
2. Clark Steel Framing.
3. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
4. Custom Stud, Inc.
5. Dale/Incor.
6. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
7. Steel Network, Inc. (The)
8. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:

1. Grade: ST33H minimum.
2. Coating: G60 minimum.

B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: 50, Class 1
2. Coating: G90.

2.3 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING (EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR)

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.
3. Section Properties: as required.

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches minimum.

C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.
3. Section Properties: as required.

D. Steel Double-L Headers: Manufacturer's standard L-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.
3. Section Properties: as required.

2.4 NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING (EXTERIOR) (Note: Re: 09111 "Non-Load Bearing Steel Framing", for non-load bearing wall framing @ interior walls)

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.
3. Section Properties: as required.

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, un-punched, with un-stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches minimum.

C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
b. The Steel Network, Inc.

D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; un-punched, with un-stiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
b. Flange Width: 1 inch plus the design gap.

E. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; un-punched, with un-stiffened flanges.

1. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:

a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
b. Flange Width: 1 inch plus the design gap.

2. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated, and as follows:

a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch minimum.
b. Flange Width: Dimension equal to sum of outer deflection track flange width plus 1 inch.

F. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:

1. Supplementary framing.
2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
3. Web stiffeners.

4. Anchor clips.
5. End clips.
6. Foundation clips.
7. Gusset plates.
8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
9. Joist hangers and end closures.
10. Hole reinforcing plates.
11. Backer plates.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.

1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20.

B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.

D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multi-monomer plastic, non-leaching.

E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.

4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.

D. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.

1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not cxcccding 1/16 inch.

D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.

F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.

H. Install insulation, specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.

I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.

J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION (EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR)

A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:

1. Anchor Spacing: as indicated..

B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/8 inch between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.

D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.

E. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.

F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.

G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.

1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.

H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.

1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.

I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced 48 inches. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches deep.

J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.

K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION (EXTERIOR)

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.

B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
3. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing studs and anchor to building structure.
4. Connect drift clips to cold formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.

E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 18 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

    a. Install solid blocking at 96-inch centers.

2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
4. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. General Contractor shall pay all costs associated with these tests and inspections.

B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.

C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05400

SECTION 05500 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
3. Shelf angles.
4. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
5. Rough Hardware.
6. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete not specified in other Sections.
7. Miscellaneous steel trim.
8. Metal bollards.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.

C. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, wedge-type inserts and other items indicated to be cast into concrete.
2. Division 4 Sections "Unit Masonry Assemblies" and “Stone Masonry” for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items indicated to be built into unit masonry.
3. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel."

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance of Ladders: Provide ladders capable of withstanding the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI A14.3.

B. Thermal Movements: Provide exterior metal fabrications that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Metal nosings.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
2. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
3. Include details for coordination with specific requirements of other Sections.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for extruded nosing.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate wall and other contiguous construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
2. Provide allowance for trimming and fitting at site.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

B. Coordinate installation of steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete that are specified in this Section but required for work of another Section. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 25, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.

C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.

D. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal channels with continuous slot complying with MFMA-3.

1. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches.
2. Material: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial steel, Type B, with G90 coating; 0.064-inch nominal thickness, unless otherwise indicated or required for application.

2.3 NONFERROUS METALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; ASTM F 593 for bolts and ASTM F 594 for nuts, Alloy Group 1.

D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.

1. Provide hot-dip or mechanically deposited, zinc-coated anchor bolts where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.

E. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3.

F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.

G. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.

H. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1.

I. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1.

J. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to four times the load imposed, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153/A 153M.

K. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material for Anchors in Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
2. Material for Anchors in Exterior Locations: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts complying with ASTM F 593 and nuts complying with ASTM F 594.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79.

C. Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Available Products:

a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer CM18/19.
b. Carboline Company; Carbozinc 621.
c. ICI Devoe Coatings; Catha-Coat 313.
d. International Coatings Limited; Interzinc 315 Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer.
e. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon Zinc-Rich Primer 97-670.
f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Corothane I GalvaPac Zinc Primer.
g. Tnemec Company, Inc.; Tneme-Zinc 90-97.

D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

F. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.

G. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

H. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts, unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.

1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
2. Furnish inserts if units are installed after concrete is placed.

C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

2.8 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.

B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.9 SHELF ANGLES

A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches from ends and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches larger than expansion or control joint.

B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.

C. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.

D. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

B. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

2.11 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with not less than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.

1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.

C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

2.13 METAL BOLLARDS

A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.

2.14 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

2.15 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:

1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:

1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B) and Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.16 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

3.3 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.

B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.

1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.4 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

A. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.

B. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05500

SECTION 05811 - ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Architectural joint systems for building interiors.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for masonry wall joint systems.
2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for liquid-applied joint sealants.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data and Shop Drawings: Provide the following for each joint system specified:

B. Placement Drawings: Include line diagrams showing plans, elevations, sections, details, splices, entire route of each joint system, and attachments to other work

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain interior architectural joint systems through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of architectural joint systems and are based on the specific systems indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.

1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.
2. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

B. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, clips, fasteners, set screws, spacers, and other accessories compatible with material in contact, as indicated or required for complete installations.

2.2 ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. General: Provide architectural joint systems of design, basic profile, materials, and operation indicated. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.

1. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where joint changes direction or abuts other materials.
2. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, tee-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous joint systems.

B. Design architectural joint systems for the following size and movement characteristics:

1. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS FOR BUILDING INTERIORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Provide a product meeting the stated requirements by any of the listed manufacturers or approved equal. The Basis-of-Design product is listed for informational purposes only and is not required to be provided.

1. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.
2. Balco, Inc.
3. Construction Specialties, Inc.
4. JointMaster/InPro Corporation.
5. Michael Rizza Company, LLC.
6. MM Systems Corporation.
7. Nystrom, Inc.
8. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.

B. Floor-to-Floor Joint Systems:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: MM Systems Corporation; LASB-NBR-2-1-1/8.
2. Type: Center plate.

a. Exposed Metal: Aluminum.

1) Finish: Class II, clear anodic.

C. Floor-to-Wall Joint Systems:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: MM Systems Corporation; LASBNE-NBR-2-1/2-18.
2. Type: Center plate.

a. Exposed Metal: Aluminum.

1) Finish: Class II, clear anodic.

2.4 FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and blockouts where architectural joint systems will be installed for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to architectural joint system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Repair concrete slabs and blockouts using manufacturer's recommended repair grout of compressive strength adequate for anticipated structural loadings.

C. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing joint systems. Provide fasteners of metal, type, and size to suit type of construction indicated and to provide for secure attachment of joint systems.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing architectural joint assemblies and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install joint systems.

1. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
2. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper joint installation and performance.
3. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
4. Locate in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
5. Heavy-Duty Systems: Repair or grout blockout as required for continuous frame support and to bring frame to proper level. Shimming is not allowed.
6. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches from each end and not more than 24 inches o.c.

C. Terminate exposed ends of joint assemblies with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.

D. Accessibility: Install floor joint systems along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete. When protective covering is removed, clean exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections. Where necessary due to heavy construction traffic, remove and properly store cover plates or seals and install temporary protection over joints. Reinstall cover plates or seals prior to Substantial Completion of the Work.

END OF SECTION 05811

SECTION 06100 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Framing with engineered wood products.
4. Wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
5. Sheathing.
6. Underlayment.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for nonstructural carpentry items exposed to view and not specified in another Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Rough Carpentry: Carpentry work not specified in other Sections and not exposed, unless otherwise specified.

B. Exposed Framing: Dimension lumber not concealed by other construction and indicated to receive a stained or natural finish.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for the following products:

1. Engineered wood products.
2. Underlayment.
3. Air-infiltration barriers.
4. Metal framing anchors.
5. Construction adhesives.

C. Material certificates for dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review.

D. Wood treatment data as follows, including chemical treatment manufacturer's instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated materials:

1. For each type of preservative-treated wood product, include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
2. For waterborne-treated products, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels indicated before shipment to Project site.
3. For fire-retardant-treated wood products, include certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with specified standard and other requirements as well as data relative to bending strength, stiffness, and fastener-holding capacities of treated materials.

E. Material test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of fire-retardant-treated wood products with requirements indicated.

F. Warranty of chemical treatment manufacturer for each type of treatment.

G. Research or evaluation reports of the model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidence the following products' compliance with building code in effect for Project.

1. Engineered wood products.
2. Air-infiltration barriers.
3. Metal framing anchors.
4. Power-driven fasteners.
5. Fire-retardant-treated wood

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: To qualify for approval, an independent testing agency must demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on evaluation of agency-submitted criteria conforming to ASTM E 699, that it has the experience and capability to satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.

B. Single-Source Responsibility for Engineered Wood Products: Obtain each type of engineered wood product from one source and by a single manufacturer.

C. Single-Source Responsibility for Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Obtain each type of fire-retardant-treated wood product from one source and by a single producer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Keep materials under cover and dry. Protect from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

1. For lumber and plywood pressure treated with waterborne chemicals, place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials:

a. Baxter: J. H. Baxter Co.
b. Chemical Specialties, Inc.
c. Continental Wood Preservers, Inc.
d. Hickson Corp.
e. Hoover Treated Wood Products, Inc.
f. Osmose Wood Preserving, Inc.

2. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials, Interior Type A:

a. Baxter: J. H. Baxter Co.
b. Chemical Specialties, Inc.
c. Continental Wood Preservers, Inc.
d. Hickson Corp.
e. Hoover Treated Wood Products, Inc.

3. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials, Exterior Type:

a. American Wood Treaters, Inc.
b. Hoover Treated Wood Products, Inc.

4. Laminated-Veneer Lumber:

a. Alpine Structures.
b. Boise Cascade Corp.
c. Georgia-Pacific Corp.
d. Louisiana-Pacific Corp.
e. Trus Joist MacMillan.
f. Willamette Industries, Inc.

5. Parallel-Strand Lumber:

a. Alpine Structures.
b. Trus Joist MacMillan.

6. Metal Framing Anchors:

a. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
b. Harlen Metal Products, Inc.
c. Silver Metal Products, Inc.
d. Simpson Strong-Tie Company, Inc.
e. Southeastern Metals Manufacturing Co., Inc.

2.2 LUMBER, GENERAL

A. Lumber Standards: Comply with DOC PS 20, "American Softwood Lumber Standard," and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

B. Inspection Agencies: Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:

1. NELMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
2. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority (Canadian).
3. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service.
4. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
5. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
6. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

C. Grade Stamps: Provide lumber with each piece factory marked with grade stamp of inspection agency evidencing compliance with grading rule requirements and identifying grading agency, grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.

1. For exposed lumber, furnish pieces with grade stamps applied to ends or back of each piece, or omit grade stamps and provide grade-compliance certificates issued by inspection agency.

D. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.

1. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where lumber or plywood is indicated as preservative treated or is specified to be treated, comply with applicable requirements of AWPA C2 (lumber) and AWPA C9 (plywood). Mark each treated item with the Quality Mark Requirements of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.

1. Do not use chemicals containing chromium or arsenic.
2. For exposed items indicated to receive stained finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

B. Pressure treat aboveground items with waterborne preservatives to a minimum retention of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. After treatment, kiln-dry lumber and plywood to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent, respectively. Treat indicated items and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood floor plates installed over concrete slabs directly in contact with earth.

C. Pressure treat wood members in contact with ground or freshwater with waterborne preservatives to a minimum retention of 0.40 lb/cu. ft.

D. Complete fabrication of treated items before treatment, where possible. If cut after treatment, apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces. Inspect each piece of lumber or plywood after drying and discard damaged or defective pieces.

2.4 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated wood is indicated, comply with applicable requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood). Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of UL; U.S. Testing; Timber Products Inspection, Inc.; or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Research or Evaluation Reports: Provide fire-retardant-treated wood acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which a current model code research or evaluation report exists that evidences compliance of fire-retardant-treated wood for application indicated.
2. For exposed items indicated to receive stained finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

B. Interior Type A: For interior locations, use chemical formulation that produces treated lumber and plywood with the following properties under conditions present after installation:

1. Bending strength, stiffness, and fastener-holding capacities are not reduced below values published by manufacturer of chemical formulation under elevated temperature and humidity conditions simulating installed conditions when tested by a qualified independent testing agency.
2. No form of degradation occurs due to acid hydrolysis or other causes related to treatment.
3. Contact with treated wood does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.

C. Exterior Type: Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

D. Inspect each piece of treated lumber or plywood after drying and discard damaged or defective pieces.

2.5 DIMENSION LUMBER

A. General: Provide dimension lumber of grades indicated according to the ALSC National Grading Rule (NGR) provisions of the inspection agency indicated.

B. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Provide framing of the following grade and species:

1. Grade: No. 2.
2. Species: Southern pine; SPIB.

C. Exterior and Load-Bearing Walls: Provide framing of the grade and species (Shown on drawings)

D. Framing Other than Non-Load-Bearing Partitions: Provide framing of the following grade and species:

1. Grade: No. 2.
2. Species: Southern pine; SPIB.

E. Ceilings (Non-Load-Bearing): For ceiling framing that does not support a floor, roof, or attic, provide the following grade and species:

1. Grade: No. 2.
2. Species: Southern pine; SPIB.

F. Other Framing Not Listed Above: Provide the following grades and species:

1. Grade: No. 2.
2. Species: Southern pine; SPIB.

G. Exposed Framing: Provide material hand-selected from lumber of species and grade indicated below for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics that would impair finish appearance.

1. Species and Grade: As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including rooftop equipment curbs and support bases, cant strips, bucks, nailers, blocking, furring, grounds, stripping, and similar members.

B. Fabricate miscellaneous lumber from dimension lumber of sizes indicated and into shapes shown.

C. Moisture Content: 19 percent maximum for lumber items not specified to receive wood preservative treatment.

D. Grade: For dimension lumber sizes, provide No. 3 or Standard grade lumber per ALSC's NGRs of any species. For board-size lumber, provide No. 3 Common grade per NELMA, NLGA, or WWPA; No. 2 grade per SPIB; or Standard grade per NLGA, WCLIB or WWPA of any species.

2.7 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

A. General: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that evidence compliance with building code in effect for Project.

1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis, and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

B. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Lumber manufactured by laminating wood veneers in a continuous press using an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559 to produce members with grain of veneers parallel to their lengths and complying with the following minimum requirements:

1. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending: 2500 psi
2. Modulus of Elasticity: 1.800,000 psi.
3. Compression Parallel to Grain: 2460 psi.
4. Compression Perpendicular to Grain: 750 psi perpendicular to and 500 psi and parallel to glue line.
5. Horizontal Shear: 285 psi perpendicular to and 190 psi parallel to glue line.

2.8 WOOD-BASED STRUCTURAL-USE PANELS, GENERAL

A. Structural-Use Panel Standards: Provide either all-veneer, mat-formed, or composite panels complying with DOC PS 2, "Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels," unless otherwise

indicated. Provide plywood panels complying with DOC PS 1, "U.S. Product Standard for Construction and Industrial Plywood," where plywood is indicated.

B. Structural-Use Panel Standard: Provide plywood panels complying with DOC PS 1, "U.S. Product Standard for Construction and Industrial Plywood."

C. Trademark: Factory mark structural-use panels with APA trademark evidencing compliance with grade requirements.

2.9 CONCEALED, PERFORMANCE-RATED STRUCTURAL-USE PANELS

A. General: Where structural-use panels are indicated for the following concealed types of applications, provide APA-performance-rated panels complying with requirements designated under each application for grade, span rating, exposure durability classification, and edge detail (where applicable).

1. Thickness: Provide panels meeting requirements specified but not less than thickness indicated.
2. Span Ratings: Provide panels with span ratings required to meet "Code Plus" provisions of APA Form No. E30, "APA Design/Construction Guide: Residential & Commercial."
3. Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.
4. Surface Finish: Fully sanded face.

B. Wall Sheathing: APA-rated sheathing.

1. Exposure Durability Classification: Exposure 1.
2. Span Rating: 12/0, 16/0, 20/0, or Wall - 16 for stud spacing of 16 inches or less.

C. Roof Sheathing: APA-rated sheathing.

1. Exposure Durability Classification: Exposure 1.
2. Span Rating: 32/16 or Roof - 32.

2.10 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.

1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with a hot-dip zinc coating per ASTM A 153 or of Type 304 stainless steel.

B. Nails, Wire, Brads, and Staples: FS FF-N-105.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: CABO NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.

F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

2.11 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

A. General: Provide galvanized steel framing anchors of structural capacity, type, and size indicated and as follows:

1. Research or Evaluation Reports: Provide products for which model code research or evaluation reports exist that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that evidence compliance of metal framing anchors for application indicated with building code in effect for Project.
2. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, for approval prior to use. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis, and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

B. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653, G60 coating designation; structural, commercial, or lock-forming quality, as standard with manufacturer for type of anchor indicated.

C. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch-long seat and 1-1/4-inch-wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.

1. Thickness: 0.052 inch.

D. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.

1. Strap Width: 1-1/2 inches.
2. Thickness: 0.052 inch.

E. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, 0.064 inch thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.

F. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch above base and with 2-inch minimum side cover, socket 0.064 inch thick, standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch thick.

G. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.

1. Width: 3/4 inch.
2. Thickness: 0.052 inch.
3. Length: As indicated.

H. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, as indicated on the plans.

I. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of 2 bolts placed 7 bolt diameters from reinforced base.

1. As indicated on the drawings.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.

B. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by both adhesive and panel manufacturers.

C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbonate (IPBC) as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Discard units of material with defects that impair quality of rough carpentry and that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted.

C. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as required for accurate fit. Correlate location of furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to allow attachment of other construction.

D. Apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber and plywood.

E. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. CABO NER-272 for power-driven staples, P-nails, and allied fasteners.
2. Published requirements of metal framing anchor manufacturer.
3. "Recommended Nailing Schedule" of referenced framing standard and with AFPA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction."
4. "Table 23-I-Q--Nailing Schedule" of the Uniform Building Code.
5. "Table 2305.2--Fastening Schedule" of the BOCA National Building Code.
6. "Table 1705.1--Fastening Schedule," of the Standard Building Code.

F. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Use finishing nails for finish work. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; predrill as required.

G. Use hot-dip galvanized or stainless-steel nails where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity.

H. Countersink nail heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes with wood filler.

3.2 WOOD GROUNDS, NAILERS, BLOCKING, AND SLEEPERS

A. Install wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and sleepers where shown and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes shown and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. Build into masonry during installation of masonry work. Where possible, anchor to formwork before concrete placement.

C. Install permanent grounds of dressed, preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WOOD FRAMING, GENERAL

A. Framing Standard: Comply with AFPA's "Manual for Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Install framing members of size and at spacing indicated.

D. Do not splice structural members between supports.

E. Firestop concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level and at ceiling line of top story. Where firestopping is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted wood blocks of 2-inch nominal-thickness lumber of same width as framing members.

3.4 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING

A. General: Arrange studs so that wide face of stud is perpendicular to direction of wall or partition and narrow face is parallel. Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs; except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions. Nail or anchor plates to supporting construction, unless otherwise indicated.

1. For exterior walls, provide 2-by-6-inch nominal-size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c., except where otherwise indicated or required.
2. For interior partitions and walls, provide 2-by-4-inch nominal-size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c., except where otherwise indicated or required.

B. Construct corners and intersections with 3 or more studs. Provide miscellaneous blocking and framing as shown and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

1. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of single-story partitions over 96 inches high and multistory partitions, using members of 2-inch nominal thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.

C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Set headers on edge and support on jamb studs.

1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs with headers not less than 4-inch nominal depth for openings 36 inches and less in width, and not less than 6-inch nominal depth for wider openings.
2. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 72 inches and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth shown or, if not shown, as recommended by AFPA's "Manual for Wood Frame Construction."

D. Provide temporary construction bracing in exterior walls, at both walls of each external corner, full-story height, until the structural panels are completely installed.

3.5 RAFTER AND CEILING JOIST FRAMING

A. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches of bearing on wood or metal, or 3 inches on masonry. Attach floor joists as follows:

1. Where supported on wood members, by toe nailing or by using metal framing anchors.
2. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as shown or, if not shown, by using metal joist hangers.

B. Fire Cuts: At joists built into masonry, bevel cut ends 3 inches and do not embed more than 4 inches.

C. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches.

D. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to 1/6 depth of joist, 1/3 at ends. Do not bore holes larger than 1/3 depth of joist; do not locate closer than 2 inches from top or bottom.

E. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.

F. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than 4 inches or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal thickness by depth of joist over supports.

G. Anchor members paralleling masonry with 1/4-by-1-1/4-inch metal strap anchors spaced not more than 96 inches o.c. extending over and fastening to 3 joists. Embed anchors at least 4 inches into masonry with ends bent at right angles 4 inches into grouted masonry.

H. Under jamb studs at openings, provide solid blocking between joist.

I. Under non-load-bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above.

1. Provide triple joists separated as above, under partitions receiving ceramic tile and similar heavy finishes or fixtures.

J. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of 96 inches o.c., between joists.

1. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel cut 1-by-3-inch nominal-size lumber, double-crossed and nailed both ends to joists.
2. Steel bridging installed to comply with bridging manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Bridging may be omitted where joist depth is 12-inch nominal size or less, and where indicated live load is 40 psf or less.

K. Ceiling Joists: Install ceiling joists with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.

1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists perpendicular to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal-size or 2-by-4-inch nominal-size stringers spaced 48 inches o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.

L. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other use metal ridge hangers.

1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size shown or, if not shown, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size shown or, if not shown, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.

M. Provide special framing as shown for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions, if any.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF STRUCTURAL-USE PANELS

A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations contained in APA Form No. E30, "APA Design/Construction Guide: Residential & Commercial," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.

1. Comply with "Code Plus" provisions of above-referenced guide.

B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:

1. Sheathing: Nail to framing.

a. Space panels 1/8 inch at edges and ends.

2. Plywood Backing Panels: Nail or screw to supports.

END OF SECTION 06100

SECTION 06105 - MISCELLANEOUS CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Wood blocking and nailers.
2. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 6 Section “Rough Carpentry”

2. Division 6 Section "Sheathing."
3. Division 6 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for nonstructural carpentry items exposed to view and not specified in another Section.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
4. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

B. Deliver interior wood materials that are to be exposed to view only after building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work other than painting is dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and humidity at occupancy levels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS (PT)

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, blocking, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS (FR)

A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27 (plywood).

1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Plywood backing panels.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

1. Blocking.
2. Nailers.
3. Miscellaneous framing,

B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content of any species.

C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated (FR), in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

2.6 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.

1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.

G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry

assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Gluing to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

D. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

E. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

F. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.

G. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Do not use carbon steel, aluminum or electroplated galvanized steel fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative treated wood.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:

1. Plywood: Anchor backing panels with fasteners of size and length and spaced as appropriate for substrate.

END OF SECTION 06105

SECTION 06160 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Building paper.
4. Sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment.
5. Flexible flashing at openings in sheathing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
2. Division 7 Section “Joint Sealants” for related sealant work.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
3. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack plywood and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Plywood: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.

C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C9.

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27.

1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for roof sheathing and where indicated.

B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Application: Treat plywood indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Roof sheathing.

2.4 WALL SHEATHING

A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I sheathing.

1. Nominal Thickness: 5/8 inch thick.

B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. "Dens-Glass Gold Exterior Sheathing" by G-P Gypsum.
b. "GlasRoc Sheathing" by BPB America Inc.

2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.

2.5 ROOF SHEATHING

A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I sheathing.

1. Nominal Thickness: 5/8 inch thick.

2.6 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.

1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

1. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide screws with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

E. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 1002.
2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 954.

2.7 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING PAPER

A. Building Paper: ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt-saturated organic felt), unperforated.

2.8 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing, and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.

B. Sheathing Tape for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing board and with a history of successful in-service use.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Plus Self-Adhered Flashing.
c. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Polyguard 300.
d. Protecto Wrap Company; PS-45.
e. Illinois Products Corporation; IPCO Wall Flashing.
f. Henry Company; Blueskin TWF.

B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."

D. Do not use carbon steel, aluminum or electroplated galvanized steel fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative treated wood.

E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30S, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.

B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:

1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:

a. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

3.3 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.

B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.

C. Horizontal Installation: Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.

D. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.

3.4 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING-PAPER INSTALLATION

A. General: Cover sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper as follows:

1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Building Paper: Apply horizontally with a 2-inch overlap and a 6-inch end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails.

1. Install building paper continuous around inside and outside corners.
2. Lap building paper to shed water.

3.5 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT

A. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing board joints, and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

3.6 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.

1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. Lap seams to shed water.
3. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches, except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
4. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
5. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
6. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Gypsum Sheathing: Protect sheathing from damage as required until finish systems are installed.

END OF SECTION 06160

SECTION 06200 - FINISH CARPENTRY AND WOODWORK (for Plastic Laminate Countertops)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plastic-laminate countertops.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing interior countertops.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each type of product and process specified and incorporated into items of architectural woodwork during fabrication, finishing, and installation.

C. Fire-retardant-treatment data for material treated to reduce combustibility. Include certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

D. Samples for initial selection of the following in the form of manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of material indicated.

1. Plastic laminates.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Firm experienced in producing architectural woodwork similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units without delaying the Work.

B. Installer Qualifications: Arrange for interior architectural woodwork installation by a firm that can demonstrate successful experience in installing architectural woodwork items similar in type and quality to those required for this Project.

C. Single-Source Responsibility: Arrange for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers by a single firm.

D. Single-Source Responsibility for Fabrication and Installation: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for fabricating, finishing, and installing woodwork specified in this Section.

E. Quality Standard: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with the following standard:

1. AWI Quality Standard: "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" of the Architectural Woodwork Institute for grades of interior architectural woodwork, construction, finishes, and other requirements.

    a. Provide AWI Certification Labels or Certificates of Compliance indicating that woodwork meets requirements of grades specified.

2. WIC Quality Standard: "Manual of Millwork" of the Woodwork Institute of California for grades of interior architectural woodwork, construction, finishes, and other requirements.

    a. Provide WIC Certified Compliance Certificate indicating that woodwork meets requirements of grades specified.
    b. Provide WIC Certified Compliance Certificate for Installation.

3. The Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in the Quality Standard as well as additional requirements beyond those of the Quality Standard. Comply with such selections and requirements in addition to the Quality Standard.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect woodwork during transit, delivery, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soilage, and deterioration.

B. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage, soil, or deteriorate woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas whose environmental conditions meet requirements specified in "Project Conditions."

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet-work is completed, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations: Obtain and comply with woodwork fabricator's and Installer's coordinated advice for optimum temperature and humidity conditions for woodwork during its storage and installation. Do not install woodwork until these conditions have been attained and stabilized so that woodwork will be within plus or minus 1.0 percent of optimum moisture content from date of installation through remainder of construction period.

C. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to be fitted to other construction, check actual dimensions of other construction by accurate field measurements before fabrication, and show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Verify locations of concealed framing, blocking, reinforcements, and furring that support woodwork by accurate field measurements before being enclosed. Record measurements on final shop drawings.
2. Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to guaranteed dimensions.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. All lumber, hardwood, softwood, and composite panels shall conform to the applicable fabrication standards from AWI or WIC.

B. Moisture Content: Minimum 6 percent, maximum l2 percent up to 2" nominal thickness, maximum l9 percent for pieces thicker than 2".

C. Plywood: Comply with U.S. Product Standard PS 1, Group 1, Douglas Fir unless otherwise specified or noted. Use exterior grade only, without visible patches or repairs on exposed sides.

1. A-B Grade: Where both faces are exposed.
2. A-C Grade: Where only one face is exposed.

2.2 PARTICLEBOARD

A. Particleboard: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering specified items which may be incorporated in the Work include the following:

1. Density: Industrial Grade 44 pounds per cubic feet minimum.
2. ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.

2.3 PLASTIC LAMINATE

A. Plastic Laminate: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering specified items which may be incorporated in the Work include the following:

1. Nevamar Corp., Odenton, MD 301-569-5000.
2. Formica Corp., Wayne, NJ 800-524-0159.
3. Wilsonart Brand Decorative Laminate, Temple, TX (800) 433-3222.

B. Thickness: Comply with NEMA LD-3.

1. GP 50: Horizontal grade.
2. CL 20: Cabinet liner.
3. BK 20: Backing sheet.
4. PF-40: Post Forming grade.

C. Pattern and Color: as selected by the church.

D. Fabricate in accordance with NEMA LD-3 and ANSI A161.2.

2.6 ADHESIVES

A. Wood Glue: Waterproof type as recommended by AWI standards for the particular application.

B. Adhesive for Plastic Laminate: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering specified items which may be incorporated in the Work include the following:

1. Non-Flammable:

a. "DAP Weld-Wood, Non-Flammable Type" - Beecham Products Inc, Dayton, OH (800) 634-8382.
b. "Penacolite - G1149A/G1131B or G1124" - Koppers Co Inc, Chemical, Pittsburgh, PA (800) 556-7727.
c. Molded Trim Adhesive: As recommended by molding manufacturer for intended use.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Plastic Laminate Work:

1. Self edge tops with same grade of laminate as top surface unless indicated otherwise.
2. Counters and work tops with sinks: Apply trim and edging prior to surface sheet. Substrate for back splashes and at edges shall be trimmed lumber. Use only exterior grade or marine grade Plywood near wet areas. All adhesives used near water shall be formulated to be specially water resistant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Tops: Anchor securely to base units and other support systems as indicated. Calk space between backsplash and wall with specified sealant.

1. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
2. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork where possible to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair to satisfaction of architect, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to fabricator and Installer that ensures that woodwork is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 06200

SECTION 07190 - WATER REPELLENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes penetrating water-repellent coatings for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:

1. Concrete paving and flatwork (unpainted).
2. Cast stone
3. Brick masonry
4. CMU

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for curing compounds, curing and sealing compounds, and penetrating liquid floor treatments.
2. Division 4 Section “Unit Masonry Assemblies”
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
4. Division 9 painting Sections for paints and coatings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.

B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that water repellents comply with requirements.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for assemblies.

D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and acceptable to manufacturer for installing their products.

B. Test Application: Apply a finish sample for each type of water repellent and substrate required. Duplicate finish of approved sample.

1. Locate each test application as directed by Architect.
2. Size: 25 sq. ft.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in sealed, original labeled containers bearing manufacturer's name, brand name, type of coating and color designation, standard compliance, materials content as well as mixing and application requirements.

B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:

1. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F.
2. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for more than 28 days.
3. Concrete or brick masonry walls are not treated prior to 30 days after building close-in.
4. Rain or snow is not predicted within 24 hours.
5. Substrate is not frozen, or surface temperature is above 40 deg F.
6. Windy conditions do not exist that may cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS

A. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomerous alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 3.3 lb/gal. or less of VOCs.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ProSoCo, Inc.; Weather Seal Siloxane WB Concentrate for exterior brick masonry, cast stone and architectural precast concrete or an approved comparable product by one of the following:

a. Chemical Products Industries, Inc.
b. Chemprobe Coating Systems, L. P.
c. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
d. Euclid Chemical Company (The).
e. Hydrozo, a division of ChemRex.
f. SaverSystems, Div. of Meredith, Inc.
g. Specco Industries, Inc.

B. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomerous alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 3.3 lb/gal. or less of VOCs.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ProSoCo, Inc.; Natural Stone Treatment for exterior stone masonry or an approved comparable product by one of the following:

a. Chemical Products Industries, Inc.
b. Chemprobe Coating Systems, L. P.
c. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
d. Euclid Chemical Company (The).
e. Hydrozo, a division of ChemRex.
f. SaverSystems, Div. of Meredith, Inc.
g. Specco Industries, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of substances that might interfere with penetration or performance of water repellents. Test for moisture content, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure that surface is dry enough.

1. Cast-in-Place Concrete: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that could prevent adhesion or penetration of water repellents.
2. Clay Brick Masonry: Clean clay brick masonry per ASTM D 5703.

B. Test for pH level, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure chemical bond to silicate minerals.

C. Protect adjoining work, including sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live plants and grass.

D. Coordination with Sealants: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.

1. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those used in the work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATION

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.

B. Dilute concentrated water repellents according to manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Apply a heavy-saturation spray coating of water repellent on surfaces indicated for treatment using low-pressure spray equipment. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for using airless spraying procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Precast Concrete: At Contractor's option, first application of water repellent on architectural precast concrete units may be completed before installing units. Mask sealant-bond surfaces to prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces.

D. Apply a second saturation spray coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Repair damage caused by water-repellent application. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

1. Remove temporary coverings and protection.

END OF SECTION 07190

SECTION 07210 - BUILDING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Glass-fiber blanket insulation for exterior walls and roof.
2. Sound attenuation batts glass-fiber insulation for interior partitions.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for insulation installed in cavity walls.
2. Division 5 Section “Cold Formed Metal Framing” for insulation installed in exterior load-bearing metal stud walls
3. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board" for installation in metal-framed assemblies of insulation specified by referencing this Section.
4. Division 15 Section "Mechanical/Piping Insulation."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.

3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

B. Protect plastic insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

A. Manufacturers:

1. CertainTeed Corporation.
2. Owens Corning.

B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

C. Where glass-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt or roll form with thermal resistances indicated:

1. 3-1/2 inches thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F.
2. 6-1/4 inches thick with a thermal resistance of 19 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F.

2.3 SOUND ATTTENUATION BATTS GLASS-FIBER INSULATION

A. Manufacturer: Certain Teed; Owens Corning.

B. Glass-Fiber Sound Attenuation Batts: Unfaced glass fiber acoustical insulation complying with ASTM C 665, Type I.

C. Thickness: 3-1/2 inches thick, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Surface Burning Characteristics:

1. Maximum flame spread: 10.
2. Maximum smoke developed: 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.

E. Combustion Characteristics: Passes ASTM E 136.

F. Fire Resistance Ratings: Passes ASTM E 119 as part of a complete fire tested wall assembly.

2.4 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

B. Aerosol Foam Insulation/Sealant: Multi-purpose foam sealant for use at all penetrations of the building sheathing and where indicated. Flame spread index of 25 or less according to ASTM E 162; with primer and noncorrosive substrate cleaner recommended by foam sealant manufacturer.

2.5 INSULATION FASTENERS

A. Adhesively or Peel & Stick Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements as described herein.
2. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

B. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements as described herein.

C. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of 2 inches between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements as described herein.

D. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements as described herein.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.

C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.

E. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

B. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
3. Install layers of insulation where indicated.

4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically.
5. Support unfaced blankets mechanically where stud cavity depth is greater than the insulation depth.

C. Install mineral-fiber insulation on substrates indicated by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:

1. Fasten insulation anchors to substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
2. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
3. After adhesive has dried, install insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
4. Provide addition mechanical support between framing members secured to the roofing sheathing as indicated or required.
5. Space mechanical supports as recommend by manufacturer and as required to support insulation without excessive sag.
6. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.

D. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into steel door and window frames, miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where indicated or required. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.

E. Aerosol Foam Insulation/Sealant: Install according to manufacturer's recommendations at sheathing penetrations and other locations including, but not limited to pipe penetrations, hose bibbs, receptacles, ductwork; etc. Also install typically at head of wall and at roof truss bearing as indicated.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER SOUND ATTENUATION BATTS IN CEILINGS FOR SOUND ATTENUATION

A. Install 3-1/2-inch-thick, glass-fiber sound attenuation batts over suspended ceilings at sound rated partitions in a width that extends insulation 30 inches on either side of partition.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER SOUND ATTENUATION BATTS IN WALLS AND PARTITIONS

A. Install unfaced glass-fiber sound attenuation batts in walls and partitions in thickness indicated and where scheduled or shown on Drawings.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07210

SECTION 07411 - METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Batten-seam metal roof panels.
2. Rain drainage sheet metal fabrications.
3. Splash pans.
4. Snow retention system.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for field-formed flashings, and other sheet metal work not part of metal roof panel assemblies.
2. Division 7 Section "Manufactured Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings, and other roof specialties not part of metal roof panel assemblies.
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants not otherwise specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Metal Roof Panel Assembly: Metal roof panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight roofing system.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Metal roof panels shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

B. Delegated Design: Design metal roof panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

C. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.

1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of roof panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal roof panels; details of edge conditions, side-seam and endlap joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.

1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:

a. Flashing and trim.
b. Gutters.
c. Downspouts.
d. Roof curbs.
e. Snow retention system.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For snow retention system to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Snow Retention System Calculations: Include calculation of number and location of snow retention system components based on snow load, roof slope, panel length and finish, and seam type and spacing.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal roof panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
2. Snow Retention System:

a. Clamp sample.
b. 24 inch long cross member sample including color-matched metal strip, splice connector, and other hardware.

E. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, on which the following are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Roof-mounted items including penetrations, snow retention system and other items mounted on roof.

F. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:

1. Metal Roof and Soffit Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, clips, battens, closures, and other metal roof panel accessories.
2. Trim and Closures: 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
3. Accessories: 12-inch- long Samples for each type of accessory.

G. Material Certificates: For underlayment, from manufacturer.

H. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.

I. Snow Retention System Quality Control Submittal:

1. Test results: Results of product load testing, issued by a recognized independent testing laboratory, showing load-to-failure value of attachment.

J. Maintenance Data: For metal roof panels and snow retention system to include in maintenance manuals.

K. Inspection Report: Copy of roofing system manufacturer's inspection report of completed roofing installation.

L. Snow Retention System Closeout Submittal:

1. Certification: Installer's certification that snow guard system was installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved Shop Drawings.

M. Warranties: Samples of special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal roof panels from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, sheets, metal roof panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal roof panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal roof panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal roof panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal roof panels to ensure dryness. Do not store metal roof panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Protect strippable protective covering on metal roof panels from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of metal roof panel installation.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit metal roof panel work to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with metal roof panels by field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof penetrations, snow retention system, and other items mounted on roof.

B. Coordinate metal roof panels with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of decks, parapets, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
b. Deterioration of metals, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal roof panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.

1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:

a. 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

3. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.3 mil.

2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: 30 to 40 mils thick minimum, consisting of slip-resisting, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc., Div. of Carlisle Companies Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
b. Grace Construction Products; a unit of Grace, W. R. & Co.; Ultra.
c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.

B. Felts: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.

C. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal roof panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

B. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.4 BATTEN-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panel assembly. Include battens and accessories required for weathertight installation.

B. Product Information:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Architectural Building Components; 200DL Panel, Double Lock Seam.

2. Panel Material: Formed from 22 gauge, Grade 50 Galvalume (ASTM 792/792M).

   a. Exterior Finish: 200-Series Smooth Finish.
   b. Color: As selected by architect from full range of standard colors.

3. Batten Material: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.

4. Clips/Fastener Assemblies: Clips should be 20 Gauge galvanized to meet the appropriate construction guidelines. Consult with manufacturer for sliding clip requirements on panels beyond 40'. Clips should be secured using two (2) fasteners of like metal type. Sliding clips should allow a full 2" of thermal movement

5. Seam: Double Lock Configuration Folded 180-degrees

6. Panel Coverage: 12 inches.

7. Batten Height: 2.0 inches.

8. Warranties:

   a. Finish Warranty: 20 years (following date of substantial completion), paint finish shall not peel, check, crack, chalk in excess of a numerical rating 8, or fade/change colors in excess of 5 E-units (Hunter Color Units)
   b. Galvalume Sheet Warranty: 20 years (after shipment from manufacturer's plant), galvalume sheet shall not be subject to substrate failure or coating, cracking, peeling, or flaking, and will not erode through or become perforated within warranty period.
   c. Weather-tightness Warranty: 20 years (following date of substantial completion). Manufacturer ensures that the installer will correct any roof leaks identified within the building beyond normal wear and tear. Liability is limited to the actual cost of the repair work

METAL SOFFIT PANELS

C. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.

D. V-Groove-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid panels formed with vertical panel edges and flat pan between panel edges; with V-groove joint between panels.

   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Petersen Aluminum Corporation; Panels or an approved comparable product.
   2. Material: Same material and finish as metal roof panels.
   3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components approved by roof panel manufacturer and as required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, flashings, sealants, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.

   1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal roof panels.

2. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
3. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.

B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material as roof panels, prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal roof panels.

C. Gutters: Formed from same material roof panels. Profile as indicated, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels.

D. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in 10-foot- long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual". Finish downspouts to match gutters.

C. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick, same finish as roof panels.

2.6 SNOW RETENTION SYSTEM

A. Snow Retention System: Prefabricated, noncorrosive units designed to be installed without penetrating metal roof panels, and complete with predrilled holes, clamps, and other components as required.

1. Seam-Mounted, Stop-Type Snow Retention System: Aluminum clamps and cross members designed for attachment to vertical ribs of standing-seam metal roof panels with stainless-steel set screws.

a. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide S-5! ColorGard by Metal Roof Innovations, Ltd. or approved comparable products.

B. Components:

1. Clamps.

a. Manufactured from 6061-T6 aluminum extrusions conforming to ASTM B221 or aluminum castings conforming to ASTM B85 and to AA Aluminum Standards and Data.
b. Clamp model as required to accommodate roofing system.
c. Set screws: 300 Series stainless steel, 18-8 alloy, 3/8 inch diameter, with round nose point.
d. Attachment bolts: 300 Series stainless steel, 18-8 alloy, 10 mm diameter, with flat washers.

2. Cross Members:

a. Manufactured from 6061-T6 alloy and temper aluminum extrusions conforming to ASTM B221 and AA Aluminum Standards and Data.
b. Receptacle in face to receive color-matched metal strips.
c. Provide splice connectors ensuring alignment and structural continuity at end joints.

3. Color Strips: Same material and finish as roof panels; obtained from roof panel manufacturer.
4. Snow and Ice Clips: Aluminum, with rubber foot, minimum 3 inches wide.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate and finish metal roof panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

C. The upper end of all panels shall be turned up and sealed as a secondary closure, refer to NRCA detail A-MTL-7.

D. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Also refer to NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for applicable details related to this Section.

1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. End Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.

2.8 FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal roof panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.

C. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal roof panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal roof panels before metal roof panel installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Extend underlayment into gutter trough. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

1. Roof perimeter for a distance up from eaves of 24 inches beyond interior wall line.
2. Valleys, from lowest point to highest point, for a distance on each side of 18 inches. Overlap ends of sheets not less than 6 inches.
3. Rake edges for a distance of 18 inches.
4. Hips and ridges for a distance on each side of 12 inches.
5. Roof to wall intersections for a distance from wall of 18 inches.
6. Around dormers, chimneys, skylights, and other penetrating elements for a distance from element of 18 inches.

B. Felt Underlayment: Apply at locations indicated below, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

1. Apply on roof not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap over edges of self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches, in shingle fashion to shed water.

C. Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.

3.4 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations.

B. Thermal Movement. Rigidly fasten metal roof panels to structure at one and only one location for each panel. Allow remainder of panel to move freely for thermal expansion and contraction.

1. Point of Fixity: Fasten each panel along a single line of fixing located at ridge unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer.
2. Avoid attaching accessories through roof panels in a manner that will inhibit thermal movement.

C. Install metal roof panels as follows:

1. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is not permitted.
2. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
3. Provide metal closures at rake edges and each side of ridge caps.

4. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves, rakes, and perimeter of all openings.

5. Install ridge and hip caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
6. Install metal flashing to allow moisture to run over and off metal roof panels.

D. Fasteners:

1. Aluminum Roof Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

E. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.

F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

G. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal roof panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

1. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION

A. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.

1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
2. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking according to manufacturer's written installation instructions.

3.6 METAL SOFFIT PANEL INSTALLATION

A. In addition to complying with requirements in "Metal Roof Panel Installation, General" Article, install metal soffit panels to comply with requirements in this article.

B. Metal Soffit Panels: Provide metal soffit panels full width of soffits. Install panels perpendicular to support framing.

1. Flash and seal panels with weather closures where metal soffit panels meet walls and at perimeter of all openings.

3.7 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.

B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual". Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

C. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

D. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.

1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.

E. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in elastomeric sealant compatible with roofing membrane.

F. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.8 SNOW RETENTION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Prior to beginning installation, verify that:

1. Roof panel seaming is complete.
2. Roof panel attachment is sufficient to withstand loads applied by snow guard system.
3. Installation will not impede roof drainage.

B. Preparation: Clean areas to receive attachments; remove loose and foreign matter that could interfere with installation or performance.

C. Installation:

1. Install system in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and approved Shop Drawings.
2. Place clamps at maximum 32 inches on center or as required by in-service loads.
3. Place clamps in straight, aligned rows.
4. Place both set screws on same side of clamp.
5. Tighten set screws to manufacturer's recommended torque. Randomly test set screw torque using calibrated torque wrench.

6. Insert color-matched metal strips into cross members, staggering strips to cover cross member joints.
7. Attach cross members to clamps; tighten bolts to manufacturer's recommended torque.
8. Install splice connectors at cross member end joints.
9. Do not cantilever cross members more than 3 inches beyond last clamp at ends.
10. Install one SnoClip per panel between panel seams.

3.9 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.

1. Notify Architect and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.

B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal roof panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal roof panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

B. Replace metal roof panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07411

SECTION 07460 - SIDING, SOFFIT PANELS & FASCIA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Aluminum clapboard siding.
2. Aluminum soffit panels.
3. Aluminum fascias.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for underlayment and wood framing.
2. Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal" for flashing, gutters, and other sheet metal work.
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealers" for field-applied sealants.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each type of product specified, including details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, textures, and colors.

C. Samples for initial selection purposes in form of manufacturer's sample finishes showing full range of colors, profiles and textures available.

D. Samples for verification purposes in form of two full-size units of each type of siding and accessory required.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single-Source Responsibility for Siding and Accessories: Obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of siding and related accessories from a single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying progress of the Work.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's unopened bundles or containers with labels intact.

B. Handle and store materials at Project site to prevent water damage, staining, or other physical damage. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for job site storage, handling and protection.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Conditions: Proceed with siding installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions will permit siding to be installed in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations and when substrate is completely dry.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials matching products installed as described below, packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels clearly describing contents.

1. Furnish quantity of siding equal to 2 percent of amount installed.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Project Warranty: Submit a written warranty, executed by manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace siding that fails in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, deformation or deterioration of siding beyond normal weathering. This warranty shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights the Owner may have against the Contractor under the Contract Documents.

1. Warranty period is 20 years after date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering siding which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide siding of one of the following:

1. Aluminum Clapboard Siding:

a. Alcoa Building Products, Div. Stolle Corp.

2.2 ALUMINUM CLAPBOARD SIDING

A. Formed Aluminum Siding: Aluminum siding and accessories complying with AAMA 1402 fabricated from aluminum sheet in alloy recommended by siding manufacturer, and as follows:

1. Exposure: 12 inch exposure in double 6 inch style.
2. Texture: Smooth
3. Thickness: 0.024 inch nominal.
4. Finish: Manufacturer's Alumalure 2000 finish.

5. Underlayment: Manufacturer's standard breather felt.

B. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated, provide siding with the following requirements:

1. Provide selections made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors, textures, and patterns for aluminum siding indicated and aluminum trim.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Prefinished Aluminum Siding Accessories: Solid soffit panels, ventilating soffit panels, corner posts, starter strips, clerestory column trim, clerestory stepped sill trim, and other items as recommended by manufacturer for building configuration, matching type of siding selected. See upper clerestories for trim and panels wrapping clerestory columns and stepped sills.

1. All trim and misc. aluminum accessories shall be finished with two-coat Alcoa Alumalure 2000.

B. Fasteners: Noncorrosive aluminum siding nails, in sufficient length to penetrate minimum of 1 inch into substrate. Provide prefinished fasteners in color to match siding where face nailing is unavoidable.

2.4 ALUMINUM SOFFIT PANELS

A. Soffit panels shall be equal to Rollex System 3 Aluminum soffit system and accessories. Soffit panels will be ventilated and non-ventilated with ventilated panels lanced .0600 in depth creating a series of .3120 radius openings on ½" staggered centers, making a uniform pattern 2-5/8" wide. Free air values for fully vented and center vented panels will be: System 3, 16" vented panel, 12.96 sq. in per lin. Ft. Main soffit panels shall be manufactured by Rollex and shall be 16" wide, 12' length. Furnish all necessary trim including, starter strips type S, Dividers type MD, etc. for a complete installation. Every third panel shall be a vented panel.

2.5 ALUMINUM FASCIA PANELS

A. Furnish and install aluminum fascias where shown on plans. Aluminum shall be prefinished Factory-Painted Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, 3003-H14, with a minimum thickness of 0.050 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

B. High-Performance Organic Coating Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's instructions.

1. Fluoropolymer 2-Coat Coating System: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system composed of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 605.2.

a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of choices for color and gloss.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for substrates, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of siding. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

B. Coordinate installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with siding manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations. Center nails in elongated nailing slots without binding siding to allow for thermal movement. Install trim and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Overlap butt joints to shed water away from direction of prevailing wind. Isolate dissimilar metals.

B. Comply with manufacturers installation instructions and recommendations for aluminum soffit material and accessories.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Replace damaged siding materials with new materials complying specified requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean finished surfaces as recommended by siding manufacturer, and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 07460

SECTION 07620 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes sheet metal flashing and trim in the following categories:

1. Roof-drainage systems (for both new roof construction, and repair & replacement of existing)

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 4 Sections for through-wall flashing and other integral masonry flashings specified as part of masonry work.
2. Division 7 Section “Metal Roof Panels”
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for elastomeric sealants.
4. Division 7 Roofing Sections for flashing and roofing accessories installed integral with roofing membrane as part of roofing-system work.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failing.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data including manufacturer's material and finish data, installation instructions, and general recommendations for each specified flashing material and fabricated product.

C. Shop Drawings of each item specified showing layout, profiles, methods of joining, and anchorage details.

D. Samples of sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessory items, in the specified finish. Where finish involves normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets composed of 2 or more units showing the full range of variations expected.

1. 8-inch-square Samples of specified sheet materials to be exposed as finished surfaces.

E. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experience Installer who has completed sheet metal flashing and trim work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with interfacing and adjoining Work for proper sequencing of each installation. Ensure best possible weather resistance, durability of Work, and protection of materials and finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated and with not less than the strength and durability of alloy and temper designated below:

1. Factory-Painted Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, 3003-H14, with a minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners: Same metal as sheet metal flashing or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer. Match finish of exposed heads with material being fastened.

B. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, nondrying, nonmigrating sealant.

C. Elastomeric Sealant: Generic type recommended by sheet metal manufacturer and fabricator of components being sealed and complying with requirements for joint sealants as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

D. Epoxy Seam Sealer: 2-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior and interior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

E. Adhesives: Type recommended by flashing sheet metal manufacturer for waterproof and weather-resistant seaming and adhesive application of flashing sheet metal.

F. Metal Accessories: Provide sheet metal clips, straps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units as required for installation of Work, matching or compatible with material being installed; noncorrosive; size and thickness required for performance.

G. Gutter Screen: 1/4-inch hardware cloth installed in sheet metal frames. Fabricate screen and frame of same basic material as gutters and downspouts.